English Language Intensive Programme

Rationale and Description

The English Language Intensive Programme (ELIP) Primary Resource is designed to support ESOL (English for Speakers of Other Languages) programmes. It is not intended to be a whole programme in itself, but provides guidelines for teachers of ESOL programmes by selecting some text examples, language outcomes and language learning focus points at three phases of English language learning. It is also linked directly to the English Language Learning Progressions (ELLP) and Making Language and Learning Work: Years 5-8. It is intended to be used alongside the Supporting English Language Learners in Primary Schools (SELLIPS) which provides general guidelines on text types and forms, language structures and focus for English learning in primary mainstream and ESOL specialist classes. All these resources are available from ESOL On-line.

The English Language Intensive Programme (ELIP) Primary Resource is a companion to the English Language Intensive Programme Years 7-13 Resource and contains adapted material from Foundation to Stage 2.

Foundation and Stage 1 learners are beginner learners of English. They may be literate in their first language/s or may have had little or no previous formal education and may be unable to read or write in their first language/s. They will vary widely in their exposure to English. Some may speak a little English, but this is likely to be limited to basic interpersonal communicative skills in a limited range of contexts. They will need a strong foundation in the fundamental building blocks of written and spoken English.

Stage 2 learners in primary schools are those who have established a strong foundation for their English language. They will have acquired approximately a 1000-2000 word working vocabulary. They will be gradually consolidating their English skills. Early phase learners in late primary years will be well below their age level cohort but will be moving closer towards using and producing cohort level texts. They will still need considerable intensive support.

The Example Texts give teachers some guidance on the complexity of the text appropriate at each level and will enable teachers to select texts for other curriculum areas at a similar level. The ELIP Resource is based on the principles of a spiral curriculum, as the language outcomes are similar at each Stage, but each successive Stage has an increased academic demand.

The ELIP Resource includes

- an overview of the Language Outcomes focussed on in each Stage
- an Orientation to Learning section at each Stage
- Example Texts related to a range of curriculum areas for Oral Interaction, Reading, understanding and responding and Writing, at three levels of English, with annotations on text structure, language features and grammar scope to support each Language Outcome
- suggested Teaching Components and Sample Strategies, suggested Themes, Topics and Experiences
- suggested Assessment tasks

None of the sections on Teaching Components, Sample Strategies, Grammar Scope, Suggested Topics/contexts or Assessments is intended to be comprehensive. Teachers should be encouraged to select from and add to all of these sections as far as their own professional knowledge and teaching repertoire allows. However, this Resource should support those teachers who are less confident in their knowledge about language, or uncertain about the level of text to choose and what teaching and learning strategies could be used to meet the Language Outcomes effectively.

The *ELIP Primary Resource* contains 3 stages (Foundation, Stage 1 and Stage 2). These stages are based on a language acquisition progression from a beginner level to a more advanced level of English oral language and literacy study in either a a mainstream class or an ESOL programme. Most of these learners will already be literate in their first language, but a small number, mainly some students from refugee backgrounds, will need intensive and long term support at Foundation Stage and Stage 1. Many beginners may be using texts and tasks from both these levels simultaneously, while they consolidate their Stage 1 skills.

The Resource does not represent the full range of types of texts that learners will encounter. Many classroom texts contain mixed text types. i.e. a recount may contain a passage of description, or a procedure may include a section of explanation. The Example Texts are intended to be seen as typical in their text structures and language features. Likewise, the Grammar Scope will need to be expanded as teachers focus on particular points of importance or interest which may arise. Many of the grammar points require extensive scaffolded explanation suited to the context. For example, focusing on nouns will be different at each Stage as there are many different aspects of nouns, not all of which are referred to in the Grammar Scope or Language Features. Also, not all aspects of verb phrases, such as all tenses, are explicitly referred to. Teachers will need to introduce these individual additional grammar points as appropriate, taking into account the readiness of the learners in relation to the broad pathway of additional language acquisition.

INTRODUCTION

Explanation of Stages

Foundation Stage

The Foundation Stage of the programme is for beginning English Language learners. It can also address the learning needs of older students whose readiness for English language acquisition is likely to have been affected by factors such as:

- interrupted or no schooling
- learning disabilities
- low levels of L1 literacy
- trauma
- no prior exposure to English

Teachers of beginner intensive English classes may find Foundation Stage an appropriate additional tool for screening students' entry level English language and literacy skills. Assessing students against outcomes, measured by identifying which of the learning components they have mastered, could be helpful in planning beginner class programmes, as students in these classes typically represent a wide range of proficiency and L1 literacy levels.

Early Literacy Focus

Foundation and Stage 1 Outcomes overlap especially in Oral Interaction because the Foundation Stage student typically achieves English oracy skills in the same way and at approximately the same pace as their Stage 1 counterparts. Particular focus is given at Foundation Stage to explicit teaching of the initial literacy and oral language skills which are essential for all beginning English language learners. These are specified in the Teaching Components for these stages and must include a systematic phonemic awareness programme which explicitly teaches the names and sounds and the written forms of letters, consonants, consonant clusters, vowels, and vowel blends. They will also need a systematic vocabulary teaching and learning programme which allows them to master the first 500-1000 most frequent English words.

Methodology

Students at Foundation Stage require specific support to achieve the literacy skills which underpin all successful reading and writing, as well as explicit support in developing their oral language in a range of domains. They need to develop an extensive sight vocabulary and to begin to establish clear links between the spoken and written systems of English with a systematic phonemic awareness programme. Foundation Stage outlines the learning of these skills across the key learning areas using student-centred methodologies and a range of appropriate teaching approaches and strategies.

It should be noted that not all outcomes from one Stage may be achieved before the student moves from one stage to the next. Moreover, some students may be working at different levels in different modes: they may be working at Stage 1 in Oral Interaction, and Stage 2 in Writing, or Stage 2 in Reading, understanding and responding and Stage 1 in Writing. The choice of the Stage at which a student should be placed must be based on careful diagnostic and formative assessment.

Stage 1

There are some very simple short texts and some longer more complex texts in all strands of Stage 1. This is to allow for joint deconstruction and reconstruction of texts, alongside independent construction. The more complex texts, for example the text on Jean Batten or the text on turtles, may seem very difficult in comparison with the other Stage 1 texts. However, students can be shown how to write only one sentence under each of the text stages, but have seen a model of an expanded text. Much research on the comprehension and text production of English language learners suggests that they learn better when using more difficult texts with lots of support rather than highly simplified texts.

Stage 2

The text length increases in varying degrees for Stage 2, and the complexity of the sentence structures in the Reading and Writing strands also increases. In the Oral Interaction at Stage 2, learners have to listen for detail and produce more extended oral texts.

Effective Literacy Practice in Years 1 to 4 and Effective Literacy Practice in Years 5 to 8

It is envisaged that the *ELIP Primary Resource* could be used in conjunction with *Effective Literacy Practice in Years 1 to 4* and *Effective Literacy Practice in Years 5 to 8* which are the Ministry of Education's guideline documents for literacy learning across the curriculum. These documents are a rich source of research and guidance in effective teaching and learning, including "learning to learn" strategies and complement the *ELIP Primary Resource*.

Using the Resource: teaching and learning components

It is extremely important to understand that the *ELIP Primary Resource* is not a collection of texts to be taught in isolation. The texts should be used as part of well-scaffolded units of work. For example, the Stage 2 text about Antarctica for the Language Outcome - Reading, understanding and responding to an information report - should be taught as part of a unit on Antarctica. In several of the Example Text pages, there are references to websites which contain many useful supplementary resources at a range of reading levels. Some of these are additional units of work on related topics. There are also a number of websites which provide illustrations and information to support the literature referred to in the Example Texts, such as 'Around the World in Eighty Days', and 'Whale Rider'. Te Kete Ipurangi, the Ministry of Education's education portal, has materials related to a number of the texts in all strands of the *ELIP Primary Resource*. There are many other internet sites which support other Example Texts.

Also, these units should integrate the three strands of Oral Interaction, Reading, understanding and responding, and Writing. Many of the texts in these three strands can complement each other and be used interchangeably, although the emphasis of the Teaching Components will alter according to the strand. The Orientation to Learning strand assists the development of independent learning.

Orientation to Learning

These outcomes describe the types of behaviours which are required from learners in mainstream classes. Not all learners will require to be taught all the learning behaviours, but those with no prior formal schooling will need to have the Foundation and Stage 1 behaviours explicitly and firmly established in order for them to be able to learn in the classroom. The Stage 2 Orientation to Learning outcomes lead students towards being independent learners. It is important to supplement these outcomes with a pro-social skills training programme for students who are not used to formal schooling and social interactions. Examples of pro-social skills training modules are Anger management or Finding a friend: pro-social skills micro-modules might include "how to interrupt politely", "how to ask for the teacher's help", "how to disagree politely", "how to give praise to a peer". Many students need explicit help with these interactions.

Oral Interaction

These texts are examples of the types of oral texts that learners are required to comprehend and produce in a variety of contexts, including community contexts. At Foundation and Stage 1, they include examples of interactions necessary for communicating at school.

Reading, Understanding and Responding

These outcomes apply to both silent reading and reading aloud, as the Teaching Components indicate. It should be remembered that silent reading is only possible when the text is at the independent reading level of the learner or when it is at instructional level and carefully supported with a variety of guided reading scaffolds, such as an advance organiser, or a set of question prompts. At Foundation and Stage 1, the Teaching Components strongly suggest a phonemic awareness programme, so that sound letter correspondences (including clusters and blends) are firmly established for both individual letters and vowel and consonant blends.

The Teaching Components at Stage 2 include drawing attention to syllabification and chunking text to promote fluent reading. In addition they encourage building understanding of prefixes, suffixes and word stems to increase word knowledge. All texts promote a focus on word, sentence and whole text analysis.

Writing

The Foundation Stage of Writing explicitly demonstrates the fundamental skills and understandings that learners will need to have established in order to begin to manage classroom learning. The Stages 1-2 then model text structures and describe language features of typical classroom tasks. There are likely to be many learners who will enter school in the primary years already competent in these skills. Diagnostic and placement assessments will determine this. The content of texts used in Stages 1-2 as writing models is, like that of the texts for Oral Interaction and Reading, drawn from a number of curriculum contexts.

Using the Resource: links with mainstream teachers

It is desirable for the ESOL teacher to familiarise the mainstream teachers with the Resource, explaining the Teaching Components, Sample Strategies, the Text Structures and the Language Features of texts applied to each outcome for each stage for three reasons. Firstly, understanding of some of the language features and text structures of texts in the curriculum areas will assist mainstream teachers to support the language acquisition of English language learners. Secondly, the sample strategies may enhance the ability of mainstream teachers to choose a range of strategies to engage English language learners. Thirdly, mainstream teachers may be able to share in the assessment of these outcomes in mainstream classes, particularly at later stages of language development. Using the *English Language Learning Progressions* (ELLP) will also assist mainstream teachers to understand additional language acquisition.

This sharing should be a gradual process, perhaps facilitated through a series of in-school professional development sessions using the self-access ELLP professional development manual

INTRODUCTION

as a model. There are likely to be other language and learning intentions and outcomes which are part of the ESOL teaching and learning programme. Assessing and reporting on these additional outcomes will be integrated into these teaching and learning programmes. It should be reiterated that any of the tasks in an ESOL programme, including the models presented here should be part of a carefully planned and scaffolded teaching and learning sequence. *Making Language and Learning Work: Years 5-8* provides examples of effective teaching showing the integration of language and content area learning.

It is recommended that teachers choose the Outcomes relating to the same **text type** in each of the domains of Oral Interaction, Reading, understanding and responding, and Writing when planning a unit which integrates the three.

Teaching and reporting on outcomes

The rate of progression of students through the different Stages of the *ELIP Primary Resource* will be determined by a number of well-recognised factors such as level of literacy in first language, experience of continuity or interruption in prior schooling, adjustment to school, and family circumstances. The ELIP Resource is not intended to be seen as a linear programme model. Students may progress at different rates in oral and written language development and may need intensive support in one area more than another.

Formative and cumulative assessment of student progress should occur in a wide variety of curriculum contexts as appropriate, throughout the teaching of the programme. Formal assessment should occur towards the end of each Stage. Suggested tasks for assessment can be found on the (a) pages of the *ELIP Primary Resource*.

Using the Resource: presenting the examples

When presenting the materials to the students, it is recommended that Example Texts either be copied onto individual sheets, laminated and kept as a class set, or be photocopied as **enlarged** texts. The text size should be no smaller than **size 16 or 18 font**. The language features could be copied onto a separate sheet and overlaid. It is essential to teach the Text Structure of each example, so that learners understand the stages of a typical text. Some texts have illustrations which have been designed to enhance comprehension of the written or spoken text. It is recommended that these illustrations are included in the students' version of the text. This especially applies to sequencing a series of illustrations relating to a procedure or an information report.

A digital copy of this resource is available from ESOL On-line.

Layout of the English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Teaching Components identified as key points to consider for achieving each outcome are located on the (a) pages. This is not a prescriptive list and teachers may choose to add points where applicable. Teachers may also find it useful to use *Sample Strategies*, which are also located on the (a) pages, as a quick reference for finding various teaching strategies appropriate to achieving outcomes. We should reiterate that these are indeed samples and there are many other strategies that should be used as well. In addition, teachers should be considering which teaching structures (i.e. whole class, pair work, mixed/same language groups, same/different English language proficiency groups etc) best suit the purpose of each learning task.

Suggested *Themes, Topics and Experiences* which provide suggestions for appropriate contexts for teaching each of the outcomes can also be found on the (a) pages, along with *Assessments.* These lists are not prescriptive, nor is it compulsory for all the suggestions to be used.

The *Grammar Scope* on the (b) pages is provided as a reference resource to support teachers in the preparation of their teaching and learning materials. The grammar points should be linked to each text. It is important to try and explain not just the "what" of a grammar point but also the "why". For example, when teaching the different forms of the present tense, e.g "I am writing", "I write", students should learn not only the form of the tense, but that the present tense is used to indicate that something is happening now - at the present time - or that the present tense is also used to indicate a continuous or timeless state (unchanging). e.g. Elephants are large.

Note: The *Grammar Scope* is primarily for teacher reference, so that teachers can draw the attention of students to the language features typical of different texts. It is not suggested that all the grammar items be explicitly covered with the student at one time, but over a gradual period, with opportunities for repetition and practice. Teacher knowledge about language can be supplemented with information from grammar texts which promote teaching and learning grammar at whole text level, rather than isolated sentences and words which are divorced from curriculum related texts. A select list of helpful grammar texts can be found on ESOL On-line.

The *Example Texts* provide the teacher with a guide to the level of text and a range of typical texts with which the student should be able to work. Some students may be capable of using longer, more complicated texts within each stage, while others may need additional support

or simpler texts. The range does not include all the different forms of text which the students will encounter, for example there are no advertisements. However, teachers can add these into the ESOL programme as they link to mainstream classroom texts and tasks. The *Example Texts* are located on the (b) pages or, if applicable, the (c) and (d) pages. These pages also provide a teacher reference to *Text Structure* and *Language Features* for a teaching and learning focus.

Glossary of Classroom Games suggested in Sample Strategies

These games are designed to encourage interactive language learning. They originate from a variety of sources. Many others can be found in language learning texts, such as the Cambridge Language Education series and Oxford English: Resource Books for Teachers series. The purpose of each should be explained to students whenever the games are used, so that they are explicitly attending either to the language feature which is the focus of the game (e.g. imperative verb forms in *Simon Says*), or to the reading and thinking strategies (e.g. *Listen Up!*, which requires students to listen for the most frequent words in a text). Only the less well known and non-commercial games are listed here. *Effective Literacy Practice in Years 1 to 4* and *Effective Literacy Practice in Years 5 to 8*, contain explanations of other approaches and stratagies. *Making Language and Learning Work: Years 5-8* also provides guidance on working with English language learners in the mainstream.

Listen Up!

Purpose: To develop fluency in recognising word/sound correspondences and to identify main ideas in a text.

Process: Teacher prepares a list of words (about 10 at most) from a short text - about 200-250 words maximum. Students copy down the list (in a column). Teacher reads text a little more slowly than normal reading speed and students tick each word every time they hear it. At the end of the reading, count up the number of ticks for each word and this will help identify the main ideas in a text.

Hot Seat.

Purpose: To develop oral confidence and fluency and to encourage students to process information and practise generating questions.

Process: One student sits in the middle of the class or group and the others ask him/her a question about the topic, or to spell a word, or to give a fact etc. Change after each question.

Advance/Extend (not suitable for Foundation/Stage 1)

Purpose: To develop oral confidence and fluency and to develop vocabulary. **Process:** Class works in pairs or small groups. Teacher allocates a topic (e.g. give a description of a dangerous animal, or a recount of a class trip to the Museum, or a retell of a film seen in class) and one student begins speaking. When the teacher calls "Extend", the student has to elaborate on whatever word or idea they were saying at the time. For example, if they are saying "We got on the bus" and they hear "Extend" they must give more details about the bus. After about half a minute, the teacher calls "Advance" and the next student carries on with the story/ narrative/description (It must be a shared experience or text, so the next person can talk about the same thing).

Story, Story Die

Purpose: To develop oral confidence and fluency and to develop vocabulary. **Process:** A small team (of 3 or 4) comes to the front of the class and one begins to retell the story; teacher points to another person (in random order) after a sentence or two and s/he has to carry on from the last word spoken. If s/he can do this without (major) hesitation, carry on. If not, s/he must "die" by dropping to the ground. Team is out when all players have "died".

3-2-1

Purpose: to develop oral fluency and confidence.

Process: Teacher selects two topics (e.g. an opinion topic, or a phenomenon which has been discussed in class - How earthquakes happen/How the Solar System works. If it is an individual topic, such as - "The place I would most like to visit and why", only one topic is needed. Students have a short time (about 5 minutes) to think about some ideas, then they have 3 minutes to talk about the topic (as a speech, with no interaction) to a partner. After 3 minutes, the other partner speaks. The students then find a new partner and give the same talk for 2 minutes, but much less hesitation and more fluency are expected. They then change partners for a third time and have only one minute to deliver the same speech. This last talk could be peer assessed against given criteria.

Say-It

These grids can be factual or imaginative.

Purpose: To develop vocabulary, to prepare students for writing, to enable students to speak from another viewpoint, to assist recall and identification of main points. **Process:** Make up a grid of prompts (see examples based on Stage 2 - Narrative *How Māui played with Fire* - Reading, Understanding and Responding, 13d and *The water cycle* 14c).

Class works in small groups. Teacher numbers members from 1-3 and teacher calls out "A2" (referring to the square number), "Number 1" and Number 1 answers in the first person - (e.g. *Māui*) "I am Māui. I like to make mischief and tease people. One day I decided to tease everyone by putting out their cooking fires. I knew that I could get fire from Mahuika, the goddess of fire."

	А	В	С
1	You are Māui. Explain why you put out all the fires in the village.	You are Māui's mother. Say what you thought when you found all the fires were out.	You are Māui's mother's slave. Say why you don't want to go to Mahuika to get more fire.
2	You are Mahuika. Say what you did when Māui asked you for fire the first and second time.	You are Mahuika. Say why you became angry with Māui.	You are Māui. Explain how you escaped from Mahuika and what happened to you.

		А	В	С
	You are the sun. Say what you are and explain your part in the water cycle.		You are a river. Say what you are and explain your part in the water cycle.	You are a hailstone. Say what you are and explain how you were formed.
2 you are and explain what you you a		you are and explain what you	You are an ocean. Say what you are and explain your part in the water cycle.	You are a cloud. Say what you are and explain how you are important in the water cycle.

Dictagloss (also known as **Grammar Dictation**, Ruth Wajnryb 1990 0xford English: Resource Books for Teachers, Oxford University Press)

Purpose: to listen for main ideas, to produce an edited and accurate text

Process: Teacher selects a passage of difficulty level relative to the class proficiency. Stage 1 might be two sentences and Stage 2 could be about three to five sentences. There should be some warm up activities before dictation and low frequency words or phrases should be written on the board and read to the class (see Wajnryb for examples of warm up activities). Teacher tells class that the purpose is to remember main ideas and recreate a grammatically accurate version of the text, not a word for word version. Teacher tells class to listen only (i.e. not write) the first time the text is read, at only slightly slower than normal pace. The second time the text is read, students individually note down main ideas as sentence fragments. They then pool notes in small groups (or pairs) and reconstruct a complete text from the fragments. They then edit this, takes turns around the group to read a sentence and share their edited version with the rest of the class and the teacher.

3 Level Thinking Guide.

A 3 Level Thinking Guide is a set of statements about a text. Students must decide whether they agree or disagree with each statement, based on evidence from the text or their own knowledge related to the text, or discussion. The first set of statements is based on literal understanding (reading on the lines); the second is inferential (reading between the lines) and the third is applied or interpretative (reading beyond the lines). Decisions must be justified based on evidence from the text, or from the students' prior knowledge, beliefs and experience.

Summary

The *ELIP Primary Resource* provides clear guidelines for teachers about what should be included in an ESOL programme from beginner to more advanced stages, which supports learning in a range of curriculum contexts. It recognises that language learning is a recursive process, which means that in order to become proficient users of a new language; learners need repeated opportunities to be exposed to language features and to practise identifying and using them in a variety of increasingly complex texts. At the same time it allows room for teacher preferences and encourages flexibility in programme planning. Effective use of the *ELIP Primary Resource* will assist teachers to develop coherent programmes to enhance the acquisition of English for all students facing the challenges of learning in a new language.

	Foundation Stage	Stage 1	Stage 2	
Orientation to Learning	1. Orientation to Learning	1. Orientation to Learning	1. Orientation to Learning	
Oral Interaction	 can understand and respond to a simple request can negotiate a simple transaction can express a personal opinion can listen for simple detail can listen, respond to and give a simple recount can listen, respond to and give a simple description can listen and respond to a simple narrative 	 can understand and respond to a simple request can negotiate a simple transaction can express a personal opinion can listen for simple details can listen, respond to and give a simple recount can listen, respond to and give a simple description can listen, respond to and give a simple information report can listen, respond to and retell a simple procedure can listen and respond to a simple narrative 	 can negotiate an oral transaction can listen, respond to and give a recount can listen, respond to and give a description can listen, respond to and give an information report can listen, respond to and outline a procedure can listen and respond to a narrative can listen and respond to a simple explanation 	
Reading, Understanding and Responding	 9. can demonstrate appropriate reading behaviours 10. can demonstrate a developing awareness of sound/ letter correspondences 11. can read a bank of common sight words (approximately first 500) 12. can read, understand and respond to simple sentences in familiar contexts 13. can read, understand and respond to a very simple recount 14. can read, understand and respond to a very simple description 15. can understand and respond to a very simple narrative (and/or rhyme) 	 11. can demonstrate appropriate reading behaviours 12. can read, understand and respond to a simple recount 13. can read, understand and respond to a simple description 14. can read, understand and respond to a simple information report 15. can read, understand and respond to a simple procedure 16. can read, understand and respond to a simple narrative (and/or poem) 	 9. can read, understand and respond to a recount 10. can read, understand and respond to a description 11. can read, understand and respond to an information report 12. can read, understand and respond to a procedure 13. can read, understand and respond to a narrative (and/or poem) 14. can read, understand and respond to a simple explanation 15. can read, understand and respond to a simple persuasive text 	
Writing	 16. can copy text with a degree of accuracy and legibility (including writing on lines, using upper and lower case letters appropriately, spacing words and using capital letters and full stops at the beginning and ends of sentences) 17. can identify and label familiar items (in single words or phrases) 18. can write simple sentences 19. can complete a very simple formatted text 	 17. can copy text with a degree of accuracy and legibility (as for foundation stage) 18. can complete a simple formatted text 19. can write a simple recount 20. can write a simple description 21. can write a simple information report ('simple' defined as three or four one clause or compound sentences, or more with writing support) 	 16. can complete a formatted text 17. can write a recount 18. can write a description 19. can write an information report 20. can write a simple guided procedure 21. can write a simple guided discussion or argument or opinion 22. can write a simple poem 23. can write a simple personal response ('simple' defined as 8-10 sentences, some of which may be complex and/or compound) 	

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Foundation Stage

6

Orientation to Learning

- Develop awareness of different cultural expectations
- Sit in chair at table for extended period
- Know class teachers' and classmates' names
- Read timetable, locate rooms, identify subjects
- Know basic rules and routines as appropriate to each curriculum area, specialist room or subject (e.g PE, technology, English/mainstream classroom)
- Come prepared to class e.g. bring books, calculator
- Exhibit appropriate and polite classroom behaviour, for example:
- work cooperatively in pairs or groups
- wait for others to finish speaking
- attend to teacher instructions
- take turns appropriately
- Organise work book or folder, e.g. margins, date, heading, maintaining worksheets appropriately
- Attempt set classwork
- Attempt set homework
- Use a dictionary with teacher guidance (personal/bilingual)
- Borrow from school library

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Timetable, school environment, rules and expectations, classroom procedures, routines

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Observational records/check lists
- Oral questions

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Provide an initial orientation session in L1 for new students; organise a buddy system, walk around school
- Model and monitor use of margins, dates, headings, folders, homework diaries etc.
- Change layout/seating of classroom to encourage cross-cultural understanding
- Set homework and give feedback regularly
- Provide opportunities for new students to have questions answered and procedures reinforced with L1 support

Joint/guided

- Provide weekly shared book sessions/library visits
- Play basic dictionary games
- Play games, e.g. memory, matching and circle games to reinforce greetings, personal information, vocabulary, timetable information etc.
- Participate appropriately in casual classroom exchanges

- Be ready for class with appropriate equipment
- Maintain homework diaries, sheets, folders, etc.
- Help to orient new students to class routines

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Foundation Stage

6

Oral Interaction

- Develop awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Use common formulaic phrases, e.g. greetings
- Respond to basic spoken classroom instructions
- Respond to basic requests for personal information
- Recite the alphabet and name letters and sound out the letters
- Respond to requests to spell simple personal details
- Understand appropriate intonation and stress

Note. There are many commercial texts and DVDs with a range of activities for oral interactions with beginners. These can be used for independent practice.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Self, personal information, family, school, specialist rooms, measurement, money, shopping, canteen, countries of origin, New Zealand, sporting skills, local community

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Respond non-verbally to a set of random classroom instructions
- Respond verbally to a set of basic random requests for personal information, including spelling of name and address
- Participate appropriately in a simple formulaic conversation

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model listening and repeating dialogues with visual support, recorded texts, videos, teacher talk etc.
- Use visual stimuli, e.g. video/photos to elicit personal information
- Model/mime/imitate classroom instructions
- Model alphabet song, grouping letters according to sound of letter name
- Clap/tap out beats of formulaic phrases using chants etc.

Joint/guided

- Play chain game (I'm I come from This is S/he comes from)
- Conduct pair interviews, class surveys
- Play vocabulary games, e.g. repeat if true, picture bingo, Kim's Game, board games, guess the object
- Play alphabet games, e.g. Scrabble, barrier games with letter gaps in words, card games (for letter orientation, e.g. n/u right way up)

- Respond to question cards/questions derived from survey sheets
- Identify picture or perform activity associated with classroom instructions, e.g. Simon Says
- Spell name and other personal details to classmates
- Arrange classroom objects from instructions

ORAL INTERACTION

Grammar Scope

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Aryo, Mara, Iran
Common nouns	e.g. name, time, videos
Prepositions:	
Of place	to, from, in, on, between etc., e.g. to bed, from Iran
Articles:	
Omission of article before	
most proper nouns,	
with uncountable nouns	e.g. to sport, My name is Aryo
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we, etc., e.g. l come from Iran
Possessive	my, your etc., e.g. your name, My name is Aryo
Adjectives:	e.g. tired
Adverbs:	
Of time	today, early, tomorrow etc., e.g. You should go to bed early.
Question formation:	
'wh'	what, how, where etc., e.g. What's your name? How are you today?
Verbs:	name: now are you today:
Present tense verbs	e.g. Where do you come from?
Past continuous tense verbs	
Imperative verbs	e.g. Open the window please, Thuyet.
Modals	e.g. You should go to bed early.
Simple contractions:	what's, where's, he's, she's etc., e.g. What's your name?

Text Structure and Language Features

Text Structure - Requests, demands, enquiry

1. REQUEST Initiation	FOR INFORMATION	3. POLITE EN Initiation	IQUIRY
Teacher:	What's your name?	Teacher:	How a
Response		Response	
Student:	My name is Aryo.	Student:	Tired,
Initiation		Initiation	
Teacher:	How do you spell that?	Teacher:	What
Response			sleep?
Student:	A - R - Y - O.	Response	
Initiation		Student:	12 o'c
Teacher:	Where do you come from?	Response/In	itiation
Response		Teacher:	12 o'c
Student:	(I come from) Iran.		doing
		Response	_
2. DEMAND FOR ACTION		Student:	Watch
Initiation		Initiation	
T 1			

Teacher: Open the window please, Thuyet. Response Student: O.K. Sir. (Student opens window.)

Language Features

Use of 'wh' questions, e.g. What's your name? How are you?

Use of proper nouns to identify people, places, e.g. Aryo, Ms, Mara, Iran

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversation, e.g. Tired, Ms, (not I'm tired, Ms.)

How are you today, Mara?				
Tired, Ms.				
What time did you go to				
sleep?				
12 o'clock, Ms.				
Response/Initiation				
12 o'clock! What were you				
doing?				
Watching videos.				
You should go to bed early;				
9 or 10 o'clock.				
Yes, Ms.				

Use of imperatives to initiate response, e.g. Open

Use of polite closures, e.g. Yes, Ms.

Use of imperatives to initiate response

English Language Intensive Programme

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Respond to and ask questions related to topics, e.g. greetings, weather, borrowing, time, familiar actions
- Negotiate the classroom environment:
 - make excuses/apologies for lateness, no homework etc.
 - ask for repetition, clarification, explanation
- explain absences
- ask permission to leave class/school
- Negotiate the school environment:
 - find way around school
 - locate key areas/teachers

Suggested Themes, Topics and/ or Experiences

Health, weather, school, specialist rooms, local community, time, classroom, field trip, library, canteen, science experiments, shopping, sporting skills, map skills

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Role play simple transactions in familiar contexts, e.g. canteen
- Give directions from point A to B on a map
- Request location of missing items using maps and mark location according to response
- Ask and answer questions about photos/pictures

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model problem situations and introduce appropriate responses/requests
- Model rhythm and stress patterns of English using kinetic support, e.g. stepping out short dialogues
- Introduce prepositions of location using relevant diagrams
- Model listening and repeating questions/answers with visual support
- Rehearse and video role plays

Joint/guided

- Practise questions/answers in pairs using picture card prompts
- Listen to recorded questions. Answer exchanges and supply correct information
- Use picture differences to identify features by direct observation or playing a barrier game
- Conduct question and answer quiz across themes
- Use video role plays with no sound to recall dialogue

- Use prompt cards to send students on errands
- Use relevant themes to ask/answer questions in pairs using photos/pictures
- Play barrier games with missing information
- Play '20 questions' to locate hidden objects

ORAL INTERACTION

3. can negotiate a simple transaction

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Mohammed
Common nouns	e.g. toilet, pants
Prepositions:	
Of place	to, in, on etc., e.g. to the toilet
Of time and date	in, at, after, before etc., e.g. at recess
Of duration	for etc., e.g. for a couple of minutes
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the toilet
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a note
Omission of articles	
before most proper nouns,	
with uncountable nouns	e.g. Yes, Ms.
Pronouns:	-
Subject	l, you, we etc., e.g. Can l go to the toilet,
-	please?
Object	me, him, her, us etc., e.g. I'd like you to
	wait
Possessive	your, her, my etc., e.g. Where are your grey
	pants?
Adjectives:	e.g. grey pants
Adverbs:	
Of time	tomorrow, yesterday etc,. e.g. Wear them
	tomorrow.
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. Where are your grey pants?
Subject reversal	e.g. Have you got a note?
Verbs:	
Present tense verbs	e.g. Where are your grey pants?
Past tense verbs	e.g. (My) mother washed (them).
Imperative verbs	e.g. Make sure you wear them tomorrow.
Modals	e.g. You should get a permission slip
Simple Contractions:	e.g. I'd, Can't,
•	-

Text Structure and Language Features

Text Structure - Negotiations

	ENVIRONMENT	Language Features
Opening Student:	Can I go to the toilet, please?	Use of questions, e.g. Can I go to the toilet, please? Where are your grey pants?
Response	Call i go to the tonet, please:	please: where are your grey pants:
Teacher:	Please wait for a couple of minutes until the last person has come back.	Use of polite language, e.g. Please wait
Initiation		Use of ellipsis typical of casual conversation
Student:	Can't I wait by the door, Sir?	e.g. Yes, Ms. (not Yes I have, Ms.)
Response		
Teacher:	No I'd like you to wait at your desk.	Use of nouns to name people, things, e.g.
Initiation		Mohammed, pants, toilet
Student:	Do I need a note as well?	
Response		
Teacher:	Yes, you should get a permission slip	
	from my desk as you leave the room.	
Closing		
Student:	OK, Sir.	

2. NEGOTIATE ENVIRONMENT		
Initiation		
Teacher:	Mohammed, where are your grey pants?	
Response		
Student:	(My) mother washed (them).	
Initiation		
Teacher:	Have you got a note?	
Response		
Student:	Yes, Ms. (Shows note.)	
Feedback/clo	osing	
Teacher:	OK. Make sure you wear them tomorrow.	

English Language Intensive Programme

- Develop awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Express simple likes/dislikes
- Ask/answer questions in the affirmative
- Ask/answer questions in the negative

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Food, health, leisure activities, school, sport, people, field trips, animals, clothing, weather, music style, family, countries, plants, local community

Suggested Assessment Tasks

Hot Seat game

- Teacher/student/family interview
- Oral presentation to class

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Introduce language (I like, I love etc.) using diagrams with smiling/frowning faces
- Model language (I like, I don't like) and introduce adjectives with visual support
- Brainstorm reasons for likes/dislikes with/ without L1 support and model questions and answers with 'why' and 'because'
- Use word cards to illustrate word order in questions and answers

Joint/guided

- Conduct pair interviews, class surveys
- Play guessing games supported by flow chart structure to suggest alternatives, e.g. Is it big?
- Play games to practise questions and answers, e.g. 'Guess who likes/dislikes'
- Listen to audio/video recorded interviews and complete grids; respond to true/false questions etc.

- Select and cut out pictures of likes and dislikes from magazines and share with classmates
- Conduct interviews and report on responses
- Play Hot Seat game (student sits in middle of classroom and responds to questions re likes/dislikes)
- Extend interchanges re likes/dislikes by asking for and giving reasons

ORAL INTERACTION

Grammar Scope

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Ms
Common nouns	e.g. friends, sports
Prepositions:	
Of accompaniment	with, e.g. with my friends
Articles:	
Omission of articles before	
most proper nouns and	
before uncountable nouns	e.g. I like basketball
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we, it, etc., e.g. l play with my friends.
Possessive	our, her, my etc., e.g. I play with
	my friends.
Simple conjunctions:	
Contrastive	e.g. I like swimming but I don't
	like softball.
Additive	e.g. Tell me one thing you like and
	one thing you don't like.
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. What sport do you like? Why?
'do' support	
when no auxiliary	e.g. Do you like school?
Negation:	e.g. I don't like softball.
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, I do. No, I don't.
Present tense verbs:	e.g. I like swimming.
Simple contractions:	don't, he's, she's etc., e.g. I don't like cricket.

Text Structure and Language Features

Text Structure - Opinion

EXAMPLE 1	
Initiation	
Teacher:	Do you like school?
Response	
Student:	Yes, Ms.
Initiation	
Teacher:	Why?
Response	
Student:	I play with my friends.

EXAMPLE 2InitiationTeacher:What sport do you like?ResponseStudent:I like basketball.InitiationTeacher:Do you like other sports?ResponseStudent:Yes, I like soccer.

 EXAMPLE 3

 (Leisure activity names are on the board.)

 Initiation

 Teacher:
 Tell me one thing you like and one thing you don't like. For example, 'I like swimming but I don't like softball.'

 Response
 I like soccer but I don't like cricket.

Language Features

Use of questions, e.g. Do you like school? What sport do you like?

Use of ellipsis typical of casual conversation, e.g. Yes, Ms. (not Yes, I like school, Ms.)

Use of polite language, e.g. Ms

Use of simple conjunctions, e.g. and, but

Use of nouns to name things, people e.g. basketball, friends, Ms

4 (b)

- Develop awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Respond to tone of voice with/without support from gesture
- Recognise and understand familiar words in spoken text, e.g. own name read from a list, colours, numbers
- Respond to key words in a range of common spoken instructions
- Identify key points of information with/without visual support and gesture

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any curriculum area, self, family, school, weather, shopping, canteen, geometry, living things, field trips, budgeting, sport skills, songs, friends, leisure activities, measurement, home

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Answer questions relating to specific details of a text, e.g. number, money, colour
- Listen and draw or complete maps, forms, timetables, matrices, scenes etc.

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model listening activities using recorded texts and visual prompts, e.g. present task, listen to recordings pause after required information
- Elicit correct response
- Model recording of information
- Model tracking of recorded descriptions of pictures/big books etc.
- Model listening to recording and identifying type of text, e.g. weather, advertisement
- Play Listen up! (helps identify main ideas) Make a short list of key words from a simple text, read them aloud, read the text again and students put a tick beside the word each time they hear it-count the ticks and work out the main idea of the text.

Joint/guided

- Answer true or false/multiple choice questions from recorded texts
- Listen and draw/alter pictures
- Choose item from a set of alternatives
- Select pictures from sequences of familiar procedures incorporating key words from common spoken instructions

- Answer true or false/multiple choice questions relating to specific detail, e.g. recorded texts, pair work, barrier games
- Listen to texts to complete maps, forms, timetables, matrices etc.
- Listen to recording and choose emotion (picture choice) corresponding to speaker
- Negotiate a maze/path on a map from oral instructions
- Play games, e.g. 'Guess Who', 'Guess What'

Grammar Scope

Nouns: e.g. I-Wen, Sir Proper nouns e.g. glue sticks, box, bird, sky Common nouns Prepositions: Of place from, in, on etc., e.g. from the box, in the tree Articles: the, e.g. the box Definite Indefinite a, an, e.g. a bird Simple Conjunctions: Additive and, also etc., e.g. Go and get the glue sticks. Adjectives: e.g. yellow, brown, oval, small, round **Question formation:** 'wh' e.g. How many is that? Verbs: Present tense verbs

Imperative verbs

e.g. How many is that? e.g. go, get, colour, draw

Text Structure and Language Features

Text Structure - Instructions, listen for detail

EXAMPLE 1		EXAMPLE 2	
Initiation		Initiation	
Teacher: I-Wen, go and get the glue		Teacher:	(Hands out picture stimulus). Draw a small
sticks from the box.			bird in the tree.
Feedback/initiation		Response	
Student: OK. How many, Sir?		Students:	(Draw)
Response/initiation		Initiation	
Teacher: One for each student. How		Teacher:	Colour the bird brown.
many is that? (gestures)		Response	
Response		Students:	(Colour)
Student: Eight, Sir.		Initiation	
Feedback/closing		Teacher:	Draw three large clouds in the sky.
Teacher: OK. Give them out, please.		Response	
			(Draw)
Language Features		Initiation	
Use of proper nouns to name people, e.g. I-Wen, Si	ir		Draw a round nest in the tree. Draw four oval eggs inside the nest.
Use of ellipsis typical of casual conversation, e.g.		Response	
Eight, Sir. (not That's eight, Sir.)		Students:	(Draw)
		Initiation.	
Use of imperatives (commands), e.g. Give them our	t.	Teacher:	Decide on one more thing to add to your
Colour the bird brown.			picture. Get your partner to guess what
			you have drawn, then get him/her to look
Use of expressions for feedback, e.g. OK.			at your picture check if s/he was right.
		Response	
Use of questions, e.g. How many is that?		Student/s	(Draw and discuss with partners)
Lise of adjectives from curriculum areas (oval	_		

Use of adjectives from curriculum areas (oval, round,) to extend and reinforce vocabulary development.

- Develop awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Listen and respond to events from a simple recount
- Give a simple recount
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple recount

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Many curriculum areas, field trips, family, shopping, festivals/ holidays, letters, journal, my life, local environment, time, dates, seasons, experiments, living things, sporting events, accidents and sicknesses, art/craft activities

Suggested Assessment Tasks

(could also be some of the sample stratgeies)

- Listen to a recount and number pictures accordingly
- Answer comprehension questions relating to people, events etc.
- Tell a simple recount, e.g. My morning, My weekend, An accident
- Complete simple cloze activities

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Introduce time words and past tense verbs using calendars, clocks etc. to illustrate change from present to past tense
- Go for a walk, stop after each event and say what happened
- Elicit events from an excursion and model recount structure
- Create a board game based on an excursion
- Tell a recount using sequenced pictures
- Use picture supported recount to introduce the language used to sequence events

Joint/guided

- Identify pictures corresponding to action verbs
- Sequence pictures from an oral recount
- Label picture sequences with time markers
- Question students about the time events occurred to cue retelling of events
- Ask a partner questions about a recount

- Listen to a recount and number pictures accordingly
- Answer comprehension questions relating to people, events etc.
- Retell events from a trip in correct sequence, using photos/verb list as a cue
- Tell class about weekend activities
- Listen to recount and complete simple cloze activities
- Identify similarities and differences between two versions of the same event.
- Predict the next event or sequence of events from any context

ORAL INTERACTION

6. can listen, respond to and give a simple recount

6 (b)

Text Structure and Language Features EXAMPLE 1 e.g. Sydney, Taiwan Text Structure - Recount e.g. zoo, aunt to, from, in, on etc., e.g. to the zoo at, after, before, on etc., e.g. on Thursday with etc., e.g. with my family the, e.g. the plane a, an, e.g. a good day I, you, we etc., e.g. I went to the airport. We saw monkeys and kangaroos. our, her, his, my etc., e.g. my family when, then, firstly etc., e.g. Then we went e.g. good, happy home, here, there etc., e.g. Then we went yesterday, tomorrow., e.g. Yesterday our class went to the city. e.g. Where did you go? e.g. Was it on Sunday? e.g. Did she come from Taiwan? e.g. Yes, she did. No, she didn't. Yes, it was. No. it wasn't.

Grammar Scope

Nouns: Proper nouns Common nouns Prepositions: Of place Of time and date Of accompaniment Articles: Definite Indefinite

Pronouns: Subject

Possessive Simple conjunctions: Temporal

Adjectives: Adverbs: Of place

Of time

Ouestion formation: 'wh' Subject reversal Do support when no auxiliary Short answer forms:

Verbs:

e.g. waited, went, were Past tense verbs Past continuous tense verbs e.g. was coming

home.

home.

6 (b)

	THE ZOO				
Orientation	Yesterday our class went to the city.				
Record of events	We went to the zoo. We saw monkeys and kangaroos.				
Reorientation	We went home at 3 o'clock.				
Evaluation	We enjoyed the zoo and learnt lots of things about the animals.				
EXAMPLE 2 Text Structure - Recount					
	THE AIRPORT				
Orientation	On Sunday I went to the airport. My aunt was coming from Taiwan.				
Record of events	We waited a long time. My aunt came at 10 pm.				
Reorientation	Then we went home.				
Evaluation	We were very happy. It was a good day with my family.				

anguage Features Ise of sentences

Jse of action verbs, e.g. went, waited

Jse of past tense, e.g. went, was, waited

Jse of nouns to name people, places, hings, e.g. class, city, airport

Jse of adverbial phrases, e.g. to the city, at 10 p.m.

Jse of conjunctions to sequence events, g. then

- Develop awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Listen and respond to a simple description
- Give simple description, e.g. house, friend, place, equipment
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple description.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Family, literature themes, literature characters, home, school, local environment, clothing, body, places, classroom, friends, countries, self, food, equipment

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Listen to a description and draw item/complete matrix
- Answer comprehension questions relating to physical details
- Describe a person/character/setting from a story
- Choose an object and describe to class
- Choose correct item from picture bank

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model simple descriptions of objects/people emphasise adjectives of colour, size and shape.
- Model use of to be/to have in present tense
- Demonstrate and practise using personal pronouns by substituting for student names
- Extend descriptions to scenes/places using visual stimulus with emphasis on singular/plural nouns and agreement (verb/subject) there is/there are

Joint/guided

- Use sentence beginnings (it is/it has) to generate descriptive sentences
- Identify the object/person being described
- Use magazine pictures to describe people
- Play '20 Questions', 'I Spy', 'Guess Who'

- Listen to a description and draw item. Complete matrix
- Answer comprehension questions relating to physical details
- Describe a family member/character from a story
- Choose an object and describe to class

ORAL INTERACTION

7. can listen, respond to and give a simple description

7 (b)

Grammar Scope		Text Structur	e and Language Features	
Nouns:		EXAMPLE 1		
Proper nouns:	e.g. Ali, Dari, Wellington	Text Structure	- Description	
Common nouns:	e.g. sisters, soccer			
Prepositions:	-		ABOUT ME	
Of place	from, in, on etc., e.g. from Afghanistan			
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with my family	Introduction	My name is Senada. I come from Bosnia.	
Articles:			I speak Bosnian. I'm thirteen years old. I	Language Features
Omission of articles		Description	have one brother and three sisters. I live	Use of possessive pronouns as determiners
before most proper nouns	,		in Wellington with my family.	to identify particular nouns e.g. my friend,
with uncountable nouns	e.g. from Afghanistan, in Christchurch			his family, my name
Pronouns:				
Subject	he, I, you, we, it etc., e.g. He comes			Use of adjectives, e.g. two, four.
	from Afghanistan.			
Possessive	our, his, my, its etc., e.g. with his family			Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, has.
Simple conjunctions:				
Additive	and, also, as well as etc., He has two sisters			Use of thinking/feeling verbs, e.g. like
	and four brothers.	EXAMPLE 2		
Adjectives:	e.g. twelve, three, thirteen	Text Structure	- Description	Use of pronouns, e.g. he, l
Question formation:				
'wh'	e.g. What language does Ali speak?		MY FRIEND	Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. from
Subject/verb reversal	e.g. Is she Bosnian?			Afghanistan, in Christchurch
'do' support		Introduction	My friend's name is Ali. He comes from	
when no auxiliary Short answer forms:	e.g. Does he speak English?	Description	Afghanistan. He speaks Dari.He 's twelve	Use of simple conjunctions e.g. and
Present tense verbs:	e.g. Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.	Description	years old. He has two sisters and four brothers. He lives in Christchurch with his	
	e.g. He comes from Afghanistan. I'm , what's, where's, he's, she's etc. What's			
Simple contractions:	his name?		family. He likes soccer.	

- Develop awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Listen and respond to a very simple narrative, e.g. teacher prepared texts, big books, wordless texts, picture books .etc.
- Develop an awareness of the text structure and language features of a very simple narrative.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Experience based teacher prepared/adapted narratives, picture books, big books, common myths/legends/fables, puppet shows

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Listen to a narrative without pictures then correctly sequence pictures
- Teacher/student interview using 'wh' questions

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use picture cues to elicit/build field (topic) knowledge and to model emotive and descriptive language
- Read simple narratives to introduce the concept of a complication using simple language
- Introduce the concept of characters using simple language
- Provide L1 support

Joint/guided

- Identify a character from a spoken text, e.g. 'Who said/did that?'
- Use picture sequence to retell a narrative, in pairs
- Respond to a variety of comprehension questions
- Use a simple aural cloze to retell story/ identify characters

- Listen to a narrative without pictures and sequence pictures
- Listen to a narrative and draw scene
- Teacher/student interview using 'wh' questions
- Role play a narrative

ORAL INTERACTION

8 (b)

Grammar Scope		Text Structur	e and Langua	ige Features	
Nouns:		Text Structure	- Narrative		
Proper nouns	e.g. Hamid,				Language Features
Common nouns	e.g. playground, teacher			A LOST WALLET	Use of nouns to name people, places,
Prepositions:					things, e.g. wallet, money, Ms
Of place	in, to, on etc., e.g. in the playground, to	Orientation	It was lunch t	time. Hamid was in the	
	the canteen		playground. H	He was hungry. He went to the	Use of adjectives, e.g. hungry, worried, sick
Of time and date	in, at, after etc., e.g. at 3 o'clock		canteen. He le	ooked in his bag. No wallet!	
Articles:					Use of word collocation families to build
Definite	the, e.g. the playground	Complication	'Where's my	wallet?', he thought.	information, e.g. playground, canteen,
Omission of article					teacher, class
before most proper nou				c to the playground. He looked	
with uncountable nouns	s e.g. no money			at. No wallet. He felt sick. 'Oh no!	Use of adverbial (prepositional) phrases,
Pronouns:				My money!' He ran to the office	e.g. in the playground, to the door
Subject	it, I, you, we, he etc., e.g. He was very		and told his t	eacher.	
	hungry. I have no money.				Use of saying, feeling and thinking verbs,
Possessive	my, your, her, his etc., e.g. his bag, your wallet			to class. He was worried. 'How can	e.g. said, felt, thought
Simple conjunctions:			I go home? I	have no money and no bus pass.'	
Contrastive	but, although etc., e.g. There was no money				Use of action verbs in the past tense, e.g.
	but his bus pass was there.	Resolution		ock the Principal came to the door.	came, told, looked
Additive	and, also, as well as etc., e.g. I have no			s your wallet?' 'Yes, Ms,' Hamid	
	money and no bus pass.			ed inside. There was no money but	Use of direct speech, e.g. 'Yes Ms',
Adjectives:	e.g. hungry, sick, worried		his bus pass v	was there.	he said.
Adverbs:					
Of place	out, here, there, inside etc., e.g. Hamid looked				
	inside. His bus pass was there.	Negation:		e.g. Hamid's money wasn't th	
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. Is this your wallet?	Short answer f	orms:	e.g. Yes, he did. No, he didn't.	
Empty subject (there/it) +		Verbs:			
	e.g. There was no money.	Present tens		e.g. is, have	
Question formation:		Past tense v	erbs:	e.g. was, looked	
'wh'	e.g. What did Hamid lose?	Modals:		e.g. How can I go home?	
Subject reversal	e.g. Is this your wallet?	Saying, think	king and opinio		
'do' support	a a Did Hamid find his wells to	Disc at an a -b-		e.g. said, thought	thought
when no auxiliary	e.g. Did Hamid find his wallet?	Direct speech:	tione	e.g. 'Where's my wallet?', he	5
Modal	e.g. Could he buy his lunch?	Simple contrac	uons:	what's, where's, he's etc., e.g.	where s my wallet?

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Foundation Stage

Reading, Understanding and Responding

- Hold book/worksheet the right way and turn pages from front to back
- Locate beginning and end of book/worksheet
- Locate correct page/page number
- Locate letters, words, lines etc.
- Identify and say letters of alphabet in and out of sequence and match to sounds
- Recognise writing in different contexts, e.g. books, posters, charts, signs
- Identify and say numerals and ordinals in and out of sequence
- Recognise numerals and ordinals in different contexts, e.g. date, time, books, charts, mathematical operations

Teaching note

A sound, interactive and age-appropriate phonemic awareness programme is an essential component of foundation reading.

There are also a number of DVDs which contain either alphabet or word recognition programmes. Some contain interactive books. These are very useful for individuals or small groups of early phase learners.

It is also very important to make good and frequent use of recorded texts, as they can be taken home by students for practice, and consolidation. They assist the development of pronunciation, listening skills, vocabulary acquisition and of fluency.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any curriculum topic, (living things, matter) calendar, library, reading programs, personal dictionary, New Zealand , colour wheel, graphs, ID cards, numbers, lab safety,

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model how to hold book, turn pages from left to right, tracking text
- Model elements of fiction and non-fiction books, e.g. title, pages, illustrations
- Model different elements of text, e.g. full stops, capital letters, words, lines
- Display date, alphabet
- Compare English numerical system with others where appropriate, e.g. Arabic

Joint/guided

- Say, sing, sequence alphabet/numbers (chorus, individual, flash cards etc.)
- Listen to audio text, e.g. teacher/language master while tracking written text
- Develop and display word banks using wall charts
- Play word games to identify, spell and put in alphabetical order, e.g. Hangman, find the 5 letter words

Independent

- Match written dates with numerical forms
- Match cut up sentences to original text, words, and phrases
- List words in alphabetical order

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Listen to text; track and circle words
- Put lists of words in alphabetical order
- Sequence numerals
- Identify common syllables within words

Foundation Stage

10. can demonstrate a developing awareness of sound/ letter correspondences

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop understanding of sound/letter correspondences
- Identify and name printed letters of the alphabet in and out of sequence
- Identify and articulate some basic sound/letter correspondences, for example: Initial consonants 'p', 'b', 'd', 't', 's', 'k', 'g' Common clusters 'sh', 'st', 'ch'

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any curriculum topic, personal information, school, family, colours, weather, date, time, special occasions, clothing, actions, food, places

See also the teaching note in the previous section.

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Observation of articulation, sound/letter correspondence
- Listening tasks, e.g. pick the odd sound out
- Complete word cloze exercises, focussing on initial/final sounds
- See also 'Listen up!'

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model pronunciation of individual sounds and words
- Model articulation of sounds and words using, e.g. mirrors/diagrams
- Conduct minimal pair drills in context
- Demonstrate that letters have names and sounds using L1 support
- Use known vocabulary to elicit words with the same initial sound and create a class dictionary or wall display could be clustered in topics
- Play 'Listen up'

Listen Up! Circle or tick a key identified word from a list of those read from a text (Student has a short list, has heard the list read once and then puts a tick for every time it is heard in a short text read aloud by teacher. Could be an independent task if the text is available in recorded form.)

Joint/guided

- Play games, e.g. Bingo, I Spy, alphabet games, guessing gradually revealed words
- Match initial sound to pictures of familiar vocabulary
- Listen and write initial/final letter in word
- Match upper case letters with lower case letters

Independent

- Recognise some common syllables in words, e.g. in, on, -er
- Pick the odd one out of a teacher-read list
- Total physical response games, e.g. run to the correct initial letter in response to teacher dictated words

10 (a)

- Understand that written texts are composed of individual words separated by spaces
- Use illustrations to support common vocabulary
- Identify words within a modelled/ displayed sentence
- Identify and clearly pronounce common vocabulary items including 'survival' language
- Use developing awareness of sound/letter correspondences to support knowledge of sight words
- Identify some familiar words in different fonts and contexts, e.g. toilet, office, bus stop

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any curriculum topic, personal information, school, family, colours, weather, date, time, special occasions, clothing, actions, food, places

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Identify sight words
- Read sight words
- Match words to pictures

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Build field knowledge using visual stimuli e.g. pictures, word shapes
- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress
- Practise reading through, for example: flash card drills, choral/individual reading, board drills
- Identify individual words within familiar texts

Joint/guided

- Match photos/pictures to words, words to word shapes
- Play games, e.g. miming sight vocabulary, Concentration, Snap, Bingo
- Find familiar words around school and community,
- Find words linked to curriculum contexts

- Complete simple cloze activities
- Label familiar items
- Identify sight vocabulary e.g. circle words as teacher reads
- Sequence words to form sentences
- Record common sight words in own personal dictionaries
- Read common sight words

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING

11. can read a bank of common sight words

Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Mr
Common nouns	e.g. day, world, men
Prepositions:	
Of place	e.g. at, to, in, on, between
Articles:	
Definite	e.g. the
Indefinite	e.g. a, an
Pronouns:	
Subject	e.g. l, you, we
Possessive	e.g. my, your
Adjectives:	e.g. well, little
Adverbs:	e.g. never, here
Demonstratives:	e.g. these, those
Verbs:	
Present tense verbs	e.g. is, make
Past tense verbs	e.g. did, had
Modals	e.g. can

Note. There are many different word lists. Different word lists will be needed for different purposes. Older learners will have to begin to learn academic words as soon as possible, preferably in a context.

Students should be encouraged to build their own word lists of different types of words such as frequent words, technical words, personally significant words, words which have different meanings in different subject areas (e.g. pitch)

		Johnson Word List	
the	out	like	those
of	SO	our	people
and	said	over	Mr
to	what	man	how
а	up	me	too
in	its	even	little
that	about	most	good
is	into	made	very
was	than	after	make
he	them	did	world
for	can	many	still
it	only	before	own
with	other	must	see
as	new	through	men
his	some	back	work
on	could	years	long
be	time	where	get
at	these	much	here
by	two	your	between
I	may	way	both
this	then	well	under
had	do	down	never
not	first	should	day
are	any	because	same
no	my	each	
if	now	just	

11 (b)

Language Outcomes

12. can read, understand and respond to simple sentences in familiar contexts

Suggested Teaching Components

- Recognise familiar sight vocabulary
- Identify and say basic sound/letter correspondences, e.g. initial consonants 'p', 'b', 'd'
- Begin to identify common clusters, e.g. 'sh', 'st', 'ch'
- Begin to develop awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Locate beginning/end of sentences
- Track/follow a familiar text (may be recorded)
- Repeat/read a familiar modelled text paying attention to punctuation
- Individually read aloud a familiar text paying attention to punctuation
- Understand and respond to a familiar text

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any curriculum topic, personal information, school, family, colours, weather, date, time, special occasions, clothing, actions, food, places

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Read aloud a familiar text
- Complete simple comprehension activities
- Complete simple cloze activities
- Match sentences to pictures

(Many of the teaching and learning activities above can also be used as assessment tasks)

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress, paying attention to phonics through teacher reading
- Develop sight vocabulary using picture crosswords, Scrabble, word shapes, Bingo etc.
- Use minimal pair drills to begin to identify initial consonants and common clusters
- Build on field knowledge using picture cues

Joint/guided

- Match photos/pictures to captions
- Play games, e.g. miming sight vocabulary, Concentration, Snap
- Read jointly written texts of class activity
- Match beginning and endings of sentences, e.g. My name/is Hamid.
- Complete simple grids
- Complete simple 3 Level Thinking Guides

- Complete simple cloze activities
- Complete comprehension activities, e.g. true/false, 'wh' questions
- Match sentences to pictures

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING

12. can read, understand and respond to simple sentences in familiar contexts

English Language Intensive Programme

Grammar Scope

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Tuesday, Yeng, Fairfield
Common nouns	e.g. sides, triangle, sister, boy
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, on etc., in Newtown
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with my family
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the first day
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a triangle
Omission of article	
before most proper nouns,	
with uncountable nouns	In Fairfield, in Newtown
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we, it etc., e.g. l come from Thailand.
Possessive	I, my, our, its etc., e.g. I live with my family
Conjunctions and connective	
Additive	and, also, as well as etc., e.g. I have black
	hair and brown eyes.
Adjectives:	e.g. one, cool, cloudy, black, brown
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. This is a triangle.
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. What day is it? Where do you
	come from?
Subject reversal (inversion)	e.g. ls it cold today?
'do' support	
when no auxiliary	e.g. Does your family live in Hamilton?
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it is. No, it isn't. Yes, it has.
	No, it hasn't.
Verbs:	
Present tense verbs	e.g. am, have, speak, live, go
Simple contractions	what's, where's, it's, she's etc., e.g. It's a cool
	and cloudy day.
Punctuation:	e.g. question marks, upper/lower case,
	full stops

Text Structure and Language Features

Text Structure - simple declarative sentences

EXAMPLE 1 This is a triangle. It has three sides and three angles.

EXAMPLE 2 Today is Tuesday 1st March. It is the first day of autumn. It's a cool and cloudy day.

EXAMPLE 3

My name is Yeng. I come from Thailand. I have one sister. Her name is Por-Ye. I live with my family in Newtown. I go to Newtown School.

EXAMPLE 4

I am a boy. I have black hair and brown eyes. I am 10 years old. I speak Chinese. I live in Fairfield. I like computer games. Who am I?

Language Features

Use of very basic sentence patterns e.g. subject/ verb/object; subject/verb/adverbial phrase or adjectival phrase

Use of linking verbs, e.g. is, are, have

Use of action verbs, e.g. go, speak

Use of personal pronouns, e.g. I, her, it, my

Use of common adjectives, e.g. cool, cloudy, one, first, brown

Use of nouns to identify places, people, things, e.g. Thailand, Por-Ye, triangle

Use of familiar vocabulary

Use of present tense, e.g. like, go, live

- Recognise familiar sight vocabulary
- Identify and say basic sound/ letter correspondences e.g. initial and final consonants 'p', 'b', 'd'
- Begin to identify common clusters e.g. 'sh', 'st', 'ch'
- Begin to develop awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Locate beginning/end of sentences
- Track/follow a very simple recount
- Repeat/read a very simple modelled recount paying attention to punctuation
- Individually read aloud a very simple recount paying attention to punctuation
- Understand and respond to a very simple recount
- Develop an awareness of the text structure and language features of a very simple recount

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any curriculum topic, school field trips, family, shopping, festivals/holidays, letters, journal, my life (e.g. accidents), local environment, time, dates, seasons, experiments, sporting events, cultural events

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Sequence recount
- Read aloud a familiar recount
- Match pictures to written text
- Complete very simple comprehension activities
- Identify different classes of words and explain functions
- Place words in word chains or complete semantic webs (match collocations, lexical strings) e.g. zoo, kiwi house, lions, tigers, elephants

(Many of the teaching and learning activities above can also be used as assessment tasks)

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress, paying attention to phonics, through teacher reading, recorded texts
- Build field knowledge/sight vocabulary using visual stimuli, drilling etc.
- Model cueing beginning and end of sentences
- Ask 'wh' questions to introduce concept of sequence of events, e.g. What did we do first?

Joint/guided

- Read jointly written recounts of class activities
- Sequence cut up text using time of day as a guide
- Sequence sentences to match a mimed/recorded sequence of events
- Match written text to photos/pictures
- Ask questions to check comprehension
- Complete a simple 3 Level Thinking Guide or a simple grid

Focus on form and meaning. Change text from singular to plural where possible. Add an adjective, prepositional phrase or adverb. Change a verb. Find a synonym.

- Sequence recount, e.g. story map, board game
- Answer true/false, yes/no and 'wh' questions
- Match beginnings and ends of sentences
- Punctuate recount
- Identify any missing events from a sequence (from information strips)

Foundation Stage

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING

13. can read, understand and respond to a very simple recount

Grammar Scope			nd Language Features: Examples 1 & 2	
Nouns:		Text Structure - Re	ecount	
Proper nouns	e.g. Aotea Centre, Mata, Friday			
Common nouns	e.g. buses, lions, day, shower		MATA'S SCHOOL DAY	Language Features
Prepositions:				Use of sentences
Of place	in, on, to, at etc., e.g. to the zoo, on the buses	Orientation	Mata got up at 7 o'clock. She had a shower	
Of time and date	at, in, on, after, before etc., e.g. at 3.00 pm, at 7 oʻclock		and got dressed for school.	Use of nouns to name people, places
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with her friends			things, e.g. Auckland Harbour Bridge,
Articles:		Record of events	She had breakfast and said goodbye to her	Mata, mother
Definite	the, e.g. the zoo		mother. Then she walked to the bus stop and	
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a good day		got the bus to school.	Use of adjectives, e.g. good, sunny
Omission of article				
before most proper nouns	5,		She studied English and played with her	Use of word collocation families to
with uncountable nouns	e.g. last Friday		friends. School finished at 3 o'clock and then	build information, e.g. zoo, lions,
Pronouns:			Mata went home.	tigers, kiwi house
Subject	we, he, she, it, they etc., e.g. At 9 o'clock		Mata went nome.	ligers, kiwi nouse
	we got on the buses.	Reorientation	She got home at 4 o'clock.	Use of adverbial (prepositional)
Possessive	his, her, their etc., e.g. his mother	Reonentation	She got home at 4 0 clock.	
Simple connectives and con				phrases, e.g. to the zoo, on the buses,
Temporal	e.g. Then we walked around the Kiwi House.			for school
Additive	and, also etc., e.g. He had a shower		VISIT TO THE ZOO	
	and got dressed for school.			Use of action verbs, e.g. went, saw,
Adjectives:	e.g. dark, good	Orientation	Last Friday our class went to the Auckland	walked, played
Adverbs:			zoo. It was a sunny day.	
Of place	home, here, there etc., e.g. She got			Use of past tense, e.g. got, had, said
	home at 4 o'clock	Record of events	At 9 o'clock we got on the buses. On the	
Of time	last, tomorrow etc., e.g. last Friday		way we saw the Auckland Harbour Bridge	Use of time connectives, e.g. then
Question formation:			and the Aotea Centre.	, <u>g</u>
'wh'	e.g. What time did we leave? Where did we go?			Use of conjunctions, e.g. and
Subject reversal	e.g. Was it a good day?		We got to the zoo at 11 o'clock. We saw	ose of conjunctions, e.g. and
'do' support			lions, tigers and elephants. Then we walked	
when no auxiliary	e.g. Did he have a shower?		around the dark kiwi house.	
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it was. No, it wasn't. Yes, we did. No, we didn't.		around the dark kiwi nouse.	
Past tense verbs:	e.g. went, was, got, saw, walked, played	Reorientation	We got back to school at 3:30 pm. It was a	
Punctuation:	e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full		good day.	
	stops, commas, paragraphs		- /	

14. can read, understand and respond to a very simple description

Suggested Teaching Components

- Recognise familiar sight vocabulary
- Identify and say basic sound/letter correspondences, e.g. initial consonants 'p', 'b', 'd'
- Begin to identify common clusters, e.g. 'sh', 'st', 'ch'
- Begin to develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Locate beginning/end of sentences
- Track/follow a very simple description
- Repeat/read a very simple modelled description paying attention to punctuation
- Individually read aloud a very simple description paying attention to punctuation
- Understand and respond to a very simple description
- Develop an awareness of the text structure and language features of a very simple description.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any curriculum topic, family, literature themes, literature characters, home, school, local environment, clothing, body, places, classroom, friends, countries, self, food, equipment.

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Match the picture/person/object to the written description
- Complete simple cloze exercises
- Complete simple comprehension exercises

(Many of the teaching and learning activities above can also be used as assessment tasks)

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress, paying attention to phonics, through teacher reading, recorded reading etc
- Build field knowledge using visual stimuli
- Build sight vocabulary, develop vocabulary knowledge through "Before and After" vocabulary grids (see Effective Literacy Strategies Yrs 9-13)
- Classify adjectives according to size, colour, shape, and type, and order of adjectives (For explanation of adjectives see for example Derewianka, B. A Grammar Companion)
- Jointly construct simple descriptions using visual stimulus, e.g. photos of students, objects

Joint/guided

- Read factual descriptions of familiar people, places, things; name the object/person
- Start with a noun and expand to build noun groups add adjective/s, change a determiner e.g. articles, pointing words this that etc, (see above for information on adjectives)
- Play games, e.g. matching pictures to vocabulary, Who am I? What is it?
- Play barrier games working in pairs from simple description
- Draw mind maps using language to describe people, places, events

- Match written description to visual texts
- Complete a grid of attributes and features of characters etc.
- Complete simple cloze activities (structural clozes and content clozes)
- Classify different types of verbs (linking, action, mental/verbal processes)
- Answer true/false, yes/no, 'wh' questions
- Complete simple 3 Level Thinking Guides and fill in text organisers
- Replace a missing element in the text or make up a sentence from a single word prompt
READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 14. can read, understand and respond to a very simple description

Grammar Scope			e and Language Features: Example 1 & 2
Nouns:			
Proper nouns	e.g. China, Mrs Smith		
Common nouns	e.g. uniform, pants, socks, class, teacher	Text Structure	OUR CLASS
Prepositions:			
Of place	in, from etc., e.g. in the class, from China	Introduction	We are in Year 5. There are eight boys and nine
Articles:			girls in the class. Seven students come from
Definite	the, e.g. the boys		China. Three students come from Iraq, four
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a white shirt		students come from Russia and three students
Omission of article before			come from Bosnia.
most proper nouns, or			
before uncountable nouns	e.g. from China	Description	Our teacher is Mrs Smith.
Pronouns:			
subject	we, she, he, they etc., e.g. We are in Year 5		
possessive	our etc., e.g. our English teacher		
Simple connectives:			
Additive	and, also etc., e.g. There are four boys and		
	six girls.		
Contrastive	but, or etc., e.g. The girls wear a white shirt	Text Structure	KAURI SCHOOL UNIFORM
	and a green skirt or pants.		
Adjectives:	e.g. grey, four.	Introduction	Kauri School students wear school uniform.
Empty subject (there/it) + ex	kistential 'be' + noun:		
	e.g. There are four boys.	Description	The boys wear grey pants, black shoes, white
Question formation:			socks and a white shirt.
'wh'	e.g. What is the uniform? Where are		
	they from?		The girls wear a white shirt and a green skirt
Subject reversal	e.g. Are there six students?		or pants. They wear white socks and black
'do' support			shoes.
when no auxiliary	e.g. Do they come from Iraq?		
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, there are. No, there aren't. Yes, they		
	do. No, they don't.		
Verbs:			
Present tense verbs	e.g. wear, are, come		
Punctuation	e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full		

stops, commas, paragraphs

Text Structure	OUR CLASS	
		Language Features
Introduction	We are in Year 5. There are eight boys and nine girls in the class. Seven students come from China. Three students come from Iraq, four students come from Russia and three students come from Bosnia.	Use of sentences Use of nouns, e.g. students, China, Mrs Smith
Description	Our teacher is Mrs Smith.	Use of noun groups, e.g. a white shirt, our teacher
		Use of adjectives, e.g. black, two
		Use of present tense action verbs, e.g. wear, come
Text Structure	KAURI SCHOOL UNIFORM	Use of linking verbs, e.g. is, are
Introduction	Kauri School students wear school uniform.	Agreement of subject and verb (plural - we are, and singular - Our
Description	The boys wear grey pants, black shoes, white socks and a white shirt.	maths teacher is)
	The girls wear a white shirt and a green skirt or pants. They wear white socks and black shoes.	Use of conjunctions, e.g. and, or

- Locate beginning/end of sentences
- Use illustrations to support understanding of events/characters
- Track/follow a very simple narrative
- Repeat/read a very simple narrative text along with or after teacher, paying attention to punctuation
- Understand and respond to events from a very simple narrative
- Develop an awareness of the text structure and language features of a very simple narrative

Note. Not all narratives are fictional. A key difference between a narrative and recount is that a narrative is a sequence of events which contains some sort of problem and resolution, whereas a recount is seen as a simple retelling of events. For example a **recount** of trip to town might tell the audience when you left, how you got there, what you did and when and how you came home. A **narrative version** might include an episode in which you lost your purse while in town and how you resolved the problem of losing it and getting home.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Experience based teacher prepared/adapted narratives, picture books, big books, common myths/legends/fables, puppet shows, Computer Slideshow programmes (e.g Kidpix) or Power Point

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Match written text to pictures (could be on a computer)
- Answer a variety of comprehension activities
- Sequence simplified narrative
- Add a missing event in a retell from an oral narrative

(Many of the teaching and learning activities above can also be used as assessment tasks)

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Focus on cover/title/illustrations to elicit very simple prediction
- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress through teacher reading, recorded reading etc., paying attention to phonics
- Build on field knowledge/sight vocabulary using visual stimuli and pre-teaching a few essential items
- Read and re-read a number of simple narratives to familiarise students with content and structure
- Simplify the narrative where necessary
- Provide L1 support

Joint/guided

- Role play a narrative
- Read then retell a narrative using visual cues and/or focus questions
- Sequence a simplified retell of the narrative
- Do a listening dictation on a summary of the story (Could be a Dictagloss/Grammar Dictation task see glossary of Strategies)
- Identify pronoun reference through tracking
- Identify different types of verb processes (linking, action, mental and verbal)

Independent

- Illustrate a favourite part of the story
- Complete simple comprehension questions, e.g. true/false, yes/no, 'wh' questions
- Match captions with visual text
- Complete simple cloze exercises
- Make a computer slide show of the story
- Retell a similar myth or folktale from own culture

Foundation Stage

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING

15. can understand and respond to a very simple narrative

15 (b)

Grammar Scope		Text Structure and La	nguage Features	
Nouns: Proper nouns	e.g. Samira, Farsi, Iran	Text Structure - Narrativ	e (factual)	Language Features Use of nouns to name people,
Common nouns Prepositions: Of place Of time and date Of accompaniment Articles:	e.g. friends, teacher from, in, to, on etc., e.g. from Iran on, in, after, before etc., e.g. on the first day with, without etc., e.g. with me	Orientation	FIRST DAY AT SCHOOL Samira came to Kauri School from Iran. On the first day she was scared. She couldn't speak English. "I can't understand the teacher. What will I do? I have no friends," she thought.	places, things, e.g. Samira, friends, Farsi Use of adjectives, e.g. scared, English, empty, lost
Definite Omission of article before most proper nouns, with uncountable nouns Pronouns:	the, e.g. the playground e.g. from Iran	Problem/Complication	The bell went. It was time for Sports. "I don't know where to go," she thought.	Use of conjunctions, e.g. but, and Use of adverbs/adverbial phrases,
Subject Object	she, you, we, they etc., e.g. She heard her language me, it etc., e.g. Come with me. A girl was smiling at her.		She went back to her classroom but no one was there. She went downstairs. The playground was empty. She wanted to cry.	e.g. around, to Kauri School, on the first day Use of saying and thinking verbs,
Possessive Simple conjunctions: Contrastive Adjectives: Adverbs:	her, my, their etc., e.g. her classroom, her language, my class but, or etc., e.g. She went back to her classroom but no one was there. e.g. scared, empty, happy	Resolution	Just then someone spoke. She heard her language, "Are you lost?" She turned around. A girl was smiling at her. "Are you Samira?" she asked kindly in Farsi. "You're in my class. Come with me."	e.g. said, thought Use of action verbs in the past tense, e.g. came, went, spoke Use of direct speech, e.g. "Are
Of time	at last, yesterday etc., e.g. She was happy at last. there, out, here, around etc., e.g. No one	Coda	Samira smiled. She was happy at last.	you Samira?", she asked.
Of manner Question formation: 'wh' Subject reversal 'do' support when no auxiliary Modal Negation: Short answer forms:	 was there. kindly e.gshe asked kindly in Farsi. e.g. What language did Samira speak? e.g. Was Samira happy? e.g. Did Samira find a friend? e.g. Could Samira speak English? e.g. She couldn't speak English. e.g. Yes she did. No she didn't. Yes she could, No she couldn't. 	Verbs: Present tense verbs Past tense verbs Future tense verbs Imperative verbs Saying, thinking and opinion verbs Direct speech: Simple contractions: Punctuation:	e.g. are, have e.g. was, turned e.g. What will I do? e.g. Come with me. e.g. asked, thought e.g. "I don't know where to go," she thought what's, where's, you're, he's, she's etc., e.g. Yo question marks, upper/lower case, full stops,	ou're in my class.

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Foundation Stage

Writing

6

- Employ correct pencil grip and good posture
- Form printed letters of Roman alphabet paying attention to size, shape, slope, spacing and directionality of letter formation
- Copy printed Roman alphabet with accuracy acknowledging basic conventions, e.g. position on the line
- Copy personal information accurately paying attention to capital letters and full stops
- Copy numerals accurately
- Use appropriate pen colour and setting out, e.g. margins, headings

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

All

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Copy information correctly
- Record date
- Observe/monitor student progress regularly

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model and practise size, shape, slope and spacing of letters
- Emphasise directionality of letter formation print only
- Emphasise letter position on the line by using primary writing exercise books
- Practise letter patterns relating to the letter being practised

Joint/guided

- Trace letters/words/sentences
- Copy letters/words/sentences paying attention to upper and lower case
- Use writing booklet to practise handwriting
- Use computer technology to reinforce print conventions

Independent

- Write personal information
- Copy words/sentences etc. from familiar topics
- Write for display
- Play barrier games, e.g. student reads a word another copies the word



- Trace letters and words
- Use software to identify and match upper and lower case
- Copy sight words accurately using basic conventions
- Learn to spell sight words accurately using, e.g. Look, Say, Spell, Cover, Write, Check technique
- Group words according to sounds e.g. initial sounds
- Match sight words with objects, visual texts

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

The body, the school, classroom equipment, the home, the local environment, plants, animals, specialist rooms around the school, scenes and pictures from "first word" books, postcards and pictures of familiar places (from own cultural context and country)

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Label items correctly
- Observation of student work books

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model procedures for learning spelling, e.g. Look, Say, Spell, Cover, Write, Check technique
- Identify letter/sound correspondences especially initial sound to group familiar words
- Use resources to find correct spelling e.g. books, word banks, alphabet charts

Joint/guided

- Practise using Look, Say, Spell, Cover, Write, Check technique when labelling items
- Play games to facilitate phonological awareness, e.g. I Spy, Simon Says
- Match labels to pictures; label diagrams, classroom items
- Use knowledge of sound/letter correspondence to write new words
- Correctly copy the odd one out in a group of words (e.g. letter written wrongly)

Independent

- Complete cloze activities on familiar items
- Label own worksheets, e.g. diagram of the body, map of school, sheet of maths shapes, colours
- Write words from memory
- Play barrier games, e.g. student reads a word, another copies the word
- Use software to practise alphabet recognition and letter matching.

WRITING

Grammar Scope

Nouns:	
Common nouns	e.g. toes, hand, leg
singular	e.g. ear
plural	ears lips
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the head, th
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a leg, a ki
Possessive pronouns:	my, his, her, your
Adjectives:	e.g. light, red, small

ar ips g. the head, the eyes e.g. a leg, a knee s, her, your e.g. light, red, small

Text Structure and Language Features

Labels and lists

Nouns

			<u> </u>	
head	hair	skin	face	ears
eyes	eyebrows	nose	mouth	teeth
lips	chin	neck	shoulder	fingers
hand	thumb	arm	elbow	wrist
leg	knee	ankle	foot	toes

THE BODY

Adjectives

big	small	tall	short	heavy
light	long	brown	blue	black
orange	red	green	fair	dark
light				

English Language Intensive Programme

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use capital letters and full stops appropriately
- Spell familiar vocabulary correctly using basic conventions
- Identify correspondence between spoken and written English
- Use bank of known words in writing process
- Write sentences reflecting pre-taught patterns and using appropriate vocabulary
- Write own simple sentences

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

All contexts - especially using curriculum topics

(Suggestion: labelling a self-portrait or a diagram of the human body, followed by writing a self-description using simple sentences.)

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Write sentence using visual cues and pre-taught patterns
- Use a bank of familiar words to construct simple sentences

(Many of the teaching and learning activities above can also be used as assessment tasks)

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model simple phrases/sentence patterns, e.g. this afternoon, Today is Monday.
- Model and practise re-writing student texts with standard punctuation and grammar
- Write simple sentences about a visual text using pre-taught vocabulary and sentence patterns
- Practise saying and writing simple phrases/sentence patterns

Joint/guided

- Match beginnings and endings of a sentence from a list (ensure there is one extra item in one list i.e more beginnings than endings -, so there is a cognitive demand)
- Write simple sentences using picture cues, substitution tables etc.

Independent

- Complete simple cloze exercises
- Do a listening dictation (Dictagloss/Grammar Dictation see Strategies glossary) of simple sentences and then check for accuracy against a model (could also be a joint activity)
- Write own sentences using familiar sentence patterns
- Write dictated simple sentences correctly
- Check copied writing for accuracy

WRITING

18. can write simple sentences

Grammar Scope

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Sura, Ms White, China
Common nouns	e.g. book, bus, train, day
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, from, on etc., e.g. in the class, from China
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the class
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a book
Omission of article	
before most proper nouns,	
with uncountable nouns	e.g. Today is Monday. I live in Napier.
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, she, it etc., e.g. It's two
	o'clock. She's reading.
Possessive	my, his etc., e.g. My name is Sura.
Adjectives:	e.g. sunny, two, tired
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. What is your name? Where do you live?
Subject reversal	e.g. ls it Monday?
'do' support	
when no auxiliary	e.g. Do you live in Napier?
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, I do. No, I don't. Yes, she
	does. No, she doesn't.
Verbs:	
Present tense verbs	e.g. is, come, speak, ride, have
Present continuous	
tense verbs	e.g. is reading, are swimming
modals	e.g. can
Simple contractions:	what's, it's, he's, she's etc., e.g. It's a
	sunny day. She's reading a book.
Punctuation:	e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, apostrophes

Text Structure and Language Features

EXAMPLES

1.

2.

- My name is Sura.
- Today is Monday.
- 3. This is a book.
- 4. My teacher is Ms White.
- There are nine students in the class. 5.
- It's a sunny day. 6.
- It's two o'clock. 7.
- 8. I come from China.
- I come to school by bus. 9.
- 10. I speak Arabic.
- 11. I am nine years old.
- 12. I'm tired.
- 13. I live in Napier.
- 14. I have two sisters.
- 15. I can ride a bike.
- They're swimming. 16.
- She's reading a book. 17.
- 18. I have long black hair.
- 19. An ant is an insect.

Language Features

Use of very basic sentence patterns

Use of present or present continuous tense

Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, have

Use of action verbs, e.g. ride, swim, read

Use of personal pronouns, e.g. I, she, they

Use of common adjectives, e.g. tired, sixteen, English

Use of familiar vocabulary

Use of nouns to identify places, people, things, e.g. Sura, class, bus

- Write personal information correctly in appropriate place on a very simple form
- Write numerical information correctly in appropriate place on form
- Spell familiar vocabulary correctly e.g. name, suburb, month
- Complete a very simple formatted text

Suggested Themes. Topics and/or Experiences

Personal information, formats of forms

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Complete a very simple formatted text following simple instructions, e.g. Use block letters.
- Complete a simple grid
- Write letters or words from a list of spoken words

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model language appropriate to simple forms, e.g. last name, surname
- Model placing information completely and correctly on a variety of authentic and/or simplified forms, e.g. permission notes, library cards
- Model conventions, e.g. use block letters

Joint/guided

- Conduct class surveys (students spell names for recording) and complete a grid
- Match and record personal information with appropriate prompt cards, e.g. Family Name: Lu, Age: 13
- Listen to and record personal information on grid
- Complete dictation or simple Dictagloss based on personal information

Independent

- Complete a simple formatted text based on own personal information
- Complete simple formatted texts from interviews with others
- Rewrite from all lower case to all upper case

Nouns:

Proper nouns		
Common nouns		
Punctuation:		
Numerals:		

e.g. Maria e.g. name, class e.g. upper/lower case

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 1 & 2

CLASS SURVEY			
First Name	Last Name	Birthday month	



English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Stage 1 Orientation to Learning

- Sit in chair at table for an extended period of time
- Know class teachers' and classmates' names
- Locate rooms, identify subjects
- Know/negotiate basic rules and appropriate routines
- Come prepared to class, e.g. bring books, calculator etc.
- Exhibit appropriate and polite classroom behaviour, for example:
- work cooperatively in pair or group
- wait for others to finish speaking/turn taking
- follow teacher instructions
- Organise work book or folder, e.g. margins, date, heading, maintaining worksheets in appropriate manner
- Attempt set class work and homework
- Use a dictionary with teacher guidance (personal/bi-lingual)
- Borrow and access information from library, e.g. CDs, reference books
- Participate in appropriate social interactions such as asking questions, apologising, making a request, clarifying, interrupting etc
- Maintain homework diaries, sheets, folders etc. and use the Look, Say, Spell, Cover, Write, Check method to learn vocabulary

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Set out regularly and reinforce all procedures with L1 support
- Model and monitor use of margins, dates, headings, folders, homework diaries etc.
- Change groupings in classroom to encourage cross-cultural understanding
- Model and practise appropriate social interactions to guide asking questions, interrupting, disagreeing, clarifying etc.
- Set homework and give feedback regularly using simple marking codes
- Timetable regular library visits

Joint/guided construction/task

- Participate in weekly shared book sessions (including use of sophisticated picture books)
- Play basic dictionary games
- Play games to reinforce greetings, names, organisational information etc., e.g. card games, circle games
- Participate appropriately in casual classroom exchanges

Independent construction/task

- Be ready for class with appropriate equipment
- Use repeated listening of recorded texts to develop fluency
- Help to orient new students to class routines or tell a new student about something you have learnt in the different curriculum areas

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

School environment/layout, set of rules and expectations, class trips

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Use of check lists (filled in by self)
- Observational Records
- Oral questions

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Stage 1 Oral Interaction

- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Use common formulaic phrases, e.g. greetings
- Respond to basic spoken classroom instructions
- Respond to basic request for personal information
- Recite the alphabet and name letters in random order
- Respond to request to spell simple personal detail
- Understand appropriate intonation and stress

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

Self, personal information, family, school/specialist rooms, measurement, money, shopping, canteen, countries of origin, New Zealand, sporting skills, local community, weather

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Respond non-verbally to a set of random classroom instructions
- Respond verbally to a set of basic random requests for personal information, including spelling of name and address
- Participate appropriately in a simple formulaic conversation

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model listening and repeating dialogues using visual support, recorded texts, videos, teacher talk, social interaction cue cards etc.
- Use visual stimuli, e.g. world map to prompt responses to requests for personal information
- Model/mime/imitate classroom instructions
- Model alphabet song/grouping letters according to sound of letter name
- Clap/tap out beats of formulaic phrases
- Recite rhyming poems together

Joint/guided construction

- Chain game (I'm I come from This is S/he comes from)
- Pair interviews/class surveys
- Vocabulary games, e.g. repeat if true, picture bingo, Kim's Game, board games
- Letter name games, e.g. Scrabble, Boggle, Pictionary, barrier games with word gaps

Independent construction

- Respond to question cards/questions derived from survey sheets
- Identify picture/perform activity associated with classroom instructions, e.g. Simon Says
- Spell name and other personal details to classmates

ORAL INTERACTION 2. can understand and respond to a simple request

Grammar Scope		
Nouns:		
Proper nouns	e.g. Ahmed, Vietnam	
Common nouns	e.g. name, morning	
Prepositions:		
Of place	in, from etc., e.g. from Vietnam	
Articles:	-	
Definite	the, e.g. the date	
Pronouns:	-	
Subject	l, you, we etc., e.g. Where do you come from?	
Object	him, her, us, you etc., e.g. Thank you.	
Possessives:	my, your, her etc., e.g. your name	
Simple conjunctions:	and, but etc., e.g. Open your books and write the date.	
Simple present:	e.g. My name is Hatice	
Imperatives:	e.g. Open your books.	

Stage 1

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 1 and 2

Text Structure - Polite enquiry requests

Opening Teacher: Response Student: Initiation Teacher: Response/ initiation Student: Response Teacher: Closing Student: Response/closure Teacher:

Good morning Ahmed.

Good morning Ms/ Sir.

How are you?

Fine thanks and you?

Very well thank you.

Bye Ms/Sir.

Bye Ahmed.

Language Features

Use of greetings, e.g. Good morning.

Use of proper nouns to identify people, e.g. Ahmed

Use of 'wh' questions, e.g. How are you?

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. Fine thanks. (not I'm fine thanks.)

Use of closures, e.g. Bye.

Text Structure - Demand for action

Initiation Teacher: Response

Open your books and write the date. (Non verbal; students respond, opening books, writing date.)

Language Features

Use of imperatives to initiate response, e.g. open, write

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 3 and 4

Text Structure - Request for information

Initiation	
Teacher:	What's your name?
Response	
Student:	My name is Hatice.
Initiation	
Teacher:	How do you spell that?
Response	
Student:	HATICE.

Language Features

Use of 'wh' questions, e.g. What's your name? How do you spell that? Where do you come from?

Use of proper nouns to identify people, e.g. Hatice, Vinh

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. H A T I C E (not You spell it H A T I C E.)

Use of polite closures to indicate end of exchange, e.g. Thank you.

Text Structure - Request	
for information	

Initiation	
Teacher:	What's your name?
Response	
Student:	My name is Vinh.
Initiation	
Teacher:	Where do you come from?
Response	
Student:	Vietnam.
Feedback	
Teacher:	Thank you.

Language Features

Use of 'wh' questions, e.g. What's your name?, Where do you come from?

Use of proper nouns to identify people, e.g. Vinh

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. Vietnam. (not I come from Vietnam.)

Use of polite closures to indicate end of exchange, e.g. Thank you.

- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Respond to and ask questions related to topics, e.g. greetings, weather, borrowing, time, familiar actions
- Negotiate the classroom environment, for example:
 - Make excuses/apologies, e.g. lateness/no homework
 - Ask for repetition, clarification, explanation
 - Explain absences
 - Ask permission to leave class/school early
- Negotiate the school environment, for example:
 - Find their way around school
 - Locate key areas
- Negotiate local community, e.g. purchase ticket

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

Health, weather, school/specialist rooms, local community, time, classroom, field trips, library, canteen, budgeting, science experiments, shopping, sporting skills, map skills

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Role play simple transactions in familiar contexts, e.g. canteen
- Give directions from point A to B on a map
- Using maps request location of missing items and mark location according to response
- Ask and answer questions about photos/pictures

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model problem situations and introduce appropriate response/request
- Walk around school/local area and label plans
- Introduce prepositions of location using relevant diagrams
- Model listening and repeating questions/answers with visual support

Joint/guided construction

- Practise questions/answers in pairs using picture card prompts
- Listen to recorded question/answer exchanges and supply correct information
- Use picture differences to identify features by direct observation or playing a barrier game
- Question and answer quiz across themes

Independent construction

- Use prompt cards to send students on errands
- Use relevant themes to ask/answer questions in pairs using photos/pictures
- Play barrier games using maps with missing information
- Play '20 questions' to locate hidden objects

ORAL INTERACTION 3. can negotiate a simple transaction

Grammar Scope	
Granninar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Zoran
Common nouns	e.g. student, ruler, note
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the office
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a note
Pronouns:	
Subject	I, you, we etc., e.g. I missed the bus
Object	him, her, us, me etc., e.g. Can you help me?
Possessives	my, your, her etc., e.g. your ruler
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those etc., e.g. That's \$6.00.
Simple conjunctions:	and, but etc. e.g. Go and get one.
Verbs:	
Simple present	e.g. It's the first floor. What is it?
Imperatives	e.g. Go and get one.
Negation	e.g. I don't understand.
Present continuous	e.g. She's dancing. He's walking.
Question formation:	
'wh'	what, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. Where is Room 4?
	Why are you late?
Contractions	e.g. Where's the staffroom?
Subject reversal	e.g. Is that your book?
'do' support with	
no auxiliary	e.g. Do you have your homework?
Modals	e.g. Can I have a filled roll?
Adjectives:	e.g. first, student
Simple contractions:	that's. what's, I'm he's, she's etc.
	e.g. Where's Room 4? That's \$6.00.

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 1, 2 and 3

Text Structure - Request for goods

Student 1: Response Student 2: Initiation Student 1:	Excuse me Zoran. Yes.
Student 2: Initiation	
Initiation	
Student 1:	
	Can I borrow your ruler?
Response	
Student 2:	Yes, OK.
Feedback	
Student 1:	Thanks.

Text Structure - Request for information

Initiation		Langua
Teacher:	Zoran, why are you late?	
Response		Use of p
Student:	I missed the bus.	e.g. Zora
Initiation		
Teacher:	Have you got a note from	Use of q
	the office?	Have yo
Response		
Student:	No.	Use of e
Initiation		casual c
Teacher:	Well, go and get one from	haven't
	the office please.	
Feedback	-	Use of in
Student:	OK.	

Language Features

Use of polite openings, e.g. Excuse me.

Use of questions, e.g. Can I borrow your ruler?

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. Yes. (not Yes you can borrow my ruler.)

Use of polite closures, e.g. Thanks

Text Structure - Request for information

			Language Features
	Opening/initiation		
	Student:	Excuse me Mr. White, where's	Use of polite openings,
		Room 4?	e.g. Excuse me.
	Response		-
	Teacher:	Go down the end of the corridor,	Use of questions,
		(teacher gestures) then turn left.	e.g. Where's Room 4?
		It's the first door.	-
1	Feedback		Use of imperatives, e.g. Go down
es	Teacher:	OK?	the end, turn left.
	Initiation		
	Student:	Again please.	Use of ellipsis typical of responses in
	Response		casual conversations, e.g. OK? (not
	Teacher:	Repeats directions slowly.	Is that OK?)

Use of repetition for clarification

Language Features

Use of proper nouns for opening, e.g. Zoran

Jse of questions, e.g. Why are you late? Have you got a note?

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. No. (not No, I haven't got one.)

Use of imperatives, e.g. Go and get one.

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 4 and 5

Text Structure - Request for goods

Student: Sale enquiry

Sale

Opening and Sales Request Can I have a filled roll please? Shop Assistant: Do you want a drink as well? Sale compliance Student: Yes please. That's \$6.00. Shop Assistant: Purchase (Puts down money and waits for change.) Student: Purchase closure (Takes food.) Thank you. Student:

Language Features

Use of polite openings, e.g. Excuse me.

Use of questions, e.g. Can you help me?, Can I have a filled roll please?

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. Yes. (not Yes I have) - pointing to word, I don't understand. (not I don't understand what this word means.)

Use of polite closures, e.g. Thank you.

Text Structure - Request for information

Opening	
Student:	Excuse me Sir/Ms.
Response	
Teacher:	Yes, what is it?
Initiation	
Student:	Can you help me?
Response/initiation	
Teacher:	Yes. What's the matter?
Initiation	
Student:	I don't understand (points to word).
Response/initiation	
Teacher:	(assists student) Is that clear now?
Feedback/closure	
Student:	Yes Ms/Sir. Thank you.

- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Express simple likes/dislikes
- Ask/answer questions in the affirmative
- Ask/answer questions in the negative

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Current events (gives students the chance to talk about significant local, national or world events or issues), food, health, leisure activities, school, sport, people, field trips, animals, clothing, weather, music, style, family, countries, plants

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Hot Seat game
- Teacher/student/family interview
- Oral presentation to class

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Introduce language (I like, I love etc.) using diagrams with smiling/frowning faces
- Model language (I like, I don't like) and introduce adjectives with visual support
- Brainstorm reasons for likes/dislikes and model questions and answers with 'why' and 'because'
- Use word cards to illustrate word order in questions and answers

Joint/guided construction

- Pair interviews/class surveys
- Guessing games supported by flowchart structure to suggest alternatives, e.g. Is it big? Play games to practise questions and answers, e.g. 'Guess Who Likes...', 'Guess Who Dislikes...'
- Listen to recorded interviews and complete grids, respond to true/false questions etc.
- Play "Yes, No, On the fence" Draw a line on the board with Yes at one end and No at the other Introduce the topic e.g. "Keeping pets". Students come up one at a time and put a tick on the line showing how strongly they agree/disagree and then say "I think keeping pets is a good/bad idea because (1 reason). Can extend to Listening task by getting next person to repeat what previous person said then saying own reason. (Can be used as pre-writing task)

Independent construction

- Select and cut out pictures of likes and dislikes from magazines and share with classmates.
- Extend interchanges re likes/dislikes by asking for and giving reasons
- Conduct interviews and report on responses
- Play 'Hotseat Game' (student sits in middle of classroom and responds to questions re likes/ dislikes)

English Language Intensive Programme

St	a	a	е	1

Negation:

Adjectives:

Short answer form:

Simple contractions:

ORAL INTERACTION

e.g. I don't like swimming.

e.g. next, scared

e.g. Yes I do. No I don't. Yes she is. No she isn't.

what's, I'm, he's, she's, e.g. What's your name?

Grammar Scope	
Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Hornby, Saturday
Common nouns	e.g. soccer, basketball
Prepositions:	-
Of place	in, on etc., e.g. in Hornby
Of time and date	in, at, after, before etc., e.g. after school, on Saturday
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the weekend
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we etc., e.g. l like basketball too.
Object	him, her, us, them etc., e.g. I'm going shopping with them.
Possessives	my, your, her etc., e.g. my family
Verbs:	
Simple present	e.g. I like basketball
Commonly used	
past tense verbs	did, watched, went etc., e.g. I watched videos
Demonstratives	this, that, these, those etc., e.g. This is my favourite sport. That's my
	favourite colour.
Conjunctions and connective	
	and, e.g. This is my best friend and that's his brother.
Subordinating conjunctions:	
reason	I don't like it because it's not fun.
contrast	I like blue but red's nice too.
Question formation:	
'wh'	what, where, when, who, how many etc.,
	e.g. What sport do you play?
Subject reversal	e.g. Is volleyball your favourite sport?
Tag questions	e.g. You like sport don't you?

4 (b)

Language Outcomes

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 1 and 2

Text Structure - Request for information

Initiation	
Teacher:	Do you play sport at the weekend or after school?
Response	
Student:	Yes Ms.
Initiation	
Teacher:	What sport do you play?
Response	
Student:	Soccer.
Initiation	
Teacher:	Do you like soccer best?
Response/inform	
Student:	Yes but I like basketball too.

Language Features

Use of questions, e.g. Do you play sport? What sport do you play?

Use of verbal contractions, eg. I'm

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. Soccer. (not I play soccer.)

Use of simple conjunctions, e.g. but

Text Structure - Request for information

Teacher:	Maria, are you going to swim school next week?
Response	
Student:	Yes Ms.
Initiation	
Teacher:	Do you like to swim? (swimming)?
Response	
Student:	No I'm scared.
Initiation	
Teacher:	Don't worry. It'll be OK. You'll learn a lot.

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 3 and 4

Text Structure - Request for information

Opening/initiation

Boris, what are you doing on Saturday? Teacher: Response Student: I'm going shopping with my family. Initiation Teacher: Where are you going? Response Student: Hornby Ms. Initiation Teacher: Do you like to shop there? **Response/feedback** Student: Yes, it's cheap.

Language Features

Use of questions, e.g. What are you doing?, Where are you going?

Use of verbal nouns and/or infinitive forms after 'like', e.g. shopping, to shop

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.q. Yes. (not Yes I do.) Hornby. (not I'm going to Hornby.)

Text Structure - Request for information

On an in a finitiation	
Opening/initiation	
Teacher:	Hue, what did you do in the holidays?
Response	
Student:	I watched videos Ms.
Initiation	
Teacher:	What's your favourite kind?
Response	
Student:	Lots of fighting Ms.
Initiation	
Teacher:	Do you mean action? (teacher gestures).
Response/feedback	
Student:	Yes Ms, action Ms.

Language Features

Use of questions, e.g. What did you do in the holidays?, What's your favourite?

Use of past tense, e.g. I watched videos.

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. Lots of fighting Ms. (not I like lots of fighting Ms.)

English Language Intensive Programme

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Respond to tone of voice with/or without support from gesture
- Recognise and understand familiar words in spoken text, e.g. own name read from a list, colours, numbers etc.
- Respond to key words in a range of common spoken instructions
- Identify key points of information with or without visual support and gesture

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

Curriculum topics (science, technology, sports, art equipment), self, family, weather, shopping, canteen, geometry, living things, field trips, budgeting, sport skills, songs, friends, leisure activities

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Fill in a matrix
- Complete an oral Say it
- Add a detail in a group report

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model listening activities using recorded texts and visual prompts, e.g. present task, listen to recording, pause after required information elicit correct response
- Model recording of information
- Model tracking of recorded descriptions of pictures/big books etc.
- Listen to recording and identify text form, e.g. weather, advertisement etc.

Joint/guided construction

- Answer multiple choice questions from recorded texts
- Listen and draw or alter pictures, geometrical shapes, numbers, alphabet etc.
- Listen to texts and choose correct item from a set of alternatives
- Select correct pictures from sequences of familiar procedures incorporating key words from common spoken instructions
- Play games, e.g. Guess Who. Guess What. (Describe a person or object and partner guesses what is being described – one good source of these things are junk mail catalogues – can be cut out, students select one and describe aspects of it (size, shape, colour, texture, purpose etc without naming the item)

Independent construction

- Answer questions relating to specific detail, e.g. recorded texts, pairwork, barrier games
- Listen to texts to complete maps/forms/timetables/matrices etc.
- Listen to recordings and choose emotion (picture choice) corresponding to speaker
- Negotiate a maze/path on a map from oral instructions

5 (a)

Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Biljana, Sir
Common nouns	e.g. temperature, trees
Prepositions:	
Of place	for, in, on etc., e.g. for Wellington
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the weather
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a tape
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we etc., e.g. We are going to listen.
Object	me, them, us etc., e.g. Get me some more photocopies.
Possessives	my, your, her etc., e.g. your worksheet, your name
Conjunctions and	
connectives:	and, but, because etc., e.g. There's a blue car and lots of trees.
Time and sequence ma	rkers after that, first, then etc., e.g. After that listen for the weather.
Adjectives:	e.g. blue, fine, cloudy, rainy
Adverbs:	carefully, e.g. Listen carefully.
Verbs:	
Commonly used	
past tense verbs:	Did, watched, went etc., e.g. Did you finish this one at home?
Simple present:	e.g. There are two people. What colour is the car?
Empty subject (there/it) -	+ existential 'be' + noun:
	e.g. There are two cars. There's a blue car.
Simple contractions:	she's, there's, that's etc., e.g. That's right. There's a blue car.
Imperatives:	e.g. Go to the office. Get me some photocopies.
Negation:	e.g. No, not that one.
Question formation:	
'wh'	what, where, who, how many etc., e.g. What can you see?
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes there are. No there aren't.
Negation:	e.g. No, not that one.
Subject reversal	e.g. Are there two or three people?
'do' support	
when no auxiliary	e.g. Did you finish it at home?
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes there are. No there aren't.

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 1 and 2

Text Structure - Request for goods

Initiation	
Teacher:	Biljana?
Response	
Student:	Yes Sir?
Initiation	
Teacher:	Go to the office and get me some more photocopies please.
Response/initiation	
Student:	How many Sir?
Response	
Teacher:	Um, two please.

Text Structure -	Request
for information	

Opening/initiation Teacher:	OK everyone, let's have a look at this. What can you see?
Response Students: Initiation	(call out) People, car, tree, etc.
Teacher:	Yes there are people, there's a blue car and lots of trees. Now how many people?
Response	
Student:	Two Ms.
Initiation	
Teacher:	And what colour is the car?
Response	
Student:	Blue, Ms.
Initiation	
Teacher:	Very good.

Language Features

Use of proper nouns to identify people, e.g. Biljana

Use of 'wh' questions, e.g. How many Sir?

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. Two please. (not Get two please.)

Use of imperatives, e.g. Go to the office.

Language Features

Use of opening to gain attention, e.g. OK everyone

Use of questions, e.g. What can you see? How many people?

Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversations, e.g. People. Car. Tree. (not I can see people.)

Use of expressions to give positive/negative feedback, e.g. Very good.

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 3 and 4

Text Structure - Request	Opening/initiation		Language Features
for action/information	Teacher:	Right everyone, take out this worksheet.	
		(Teacher displays worksheet.)	Use of opening to gain attention, e.g. Right
	Feedback/initiation		everyone
	1.10.01	(Students take out correct worksheet.)	Use of mustices on Commune Question 22 Did
	Initiation	Conversion Operation 22 Did your finish is at home 2	Use of questions, e.g. Can you see Question 3?, Did
	Teacher:	Can you see Question 3? Did you finish it at home?	you finish it at home?
	Response Students:	Voc Mc	Use of ellipsic typical of responses in secuel
	Feedback	Yes, Ms.	Use of ellipsis typical of responses in casual conversation, e.g. Yes, Ms. (not Yes we did Ms.)
	Teacher:	Good. That's great.	conversation, e.g. res, wis. (not res we did wis.)
	ledulel.	doou. mat's great.	Use of expressions for positive/negative feedback,
			e.g. Good. That's great.
			e.g. dobu. mat's great.
Text Structure - Request	Initiation		Language Features
for action/information	Teacher:	Now we're going to listen to a recording of the weather. Look at the worksheet. First,	
		write down the temperature for Auckland, Wellington and Christchurch. (Teacher repeats	Use of imperatives, e.g. Look at the worksheet. Write
		instructions.)	down the temperature.
	Inform		
	Recording:	(Weather report recording is played.)	Use of adjectives, e.g. fine, rainy, cloudy
	Response		
		(Students respond by writing down the temperatures.)	Use of proper nouns to identify locations, e.g.
	Initiation		Wellington, Christchurch
	Teacher:	After that, listen for the weather. Will it be fine, rainy or cloudy in Wellington today?	
		Circle the correct picture on your worksheet.	Use of numerals, e.g. 28°C, 32°C
	Feedback		Use of the desired law more than the more of Calcing
	Inform	(Teacher repeats instructions with visual/gesture support.)	Use of technical language, e.g. degrees Celsius
	Inform	(Mather report played giving appropriate information)	
	Recording:	(Weather report played giving appropriate information.)	
	Response	(Students respond by circling the appropriate picture.)	
		(Stadents respond by cheming the appropriate picture.)	

5 (d)

- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Listen and respond to events from a simple recount
- Give a simple recount
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple recount

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

Field trips, family, shopping, festivals/holidays, letters, journal, my life, local environment, time, dates, seasons, experiments, accidents

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Listen to a recount and number pictures accordingly
- Answer comprehension questions relating to people, events etc.
- Tell a simple recount, e.g. 'My Morning', 'My Weekend' etc.
- Oral and written cloze activities

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Introduce time words and past tense verbs using calendars, clocks etc. to illustrate change from present to past tense
- Go for a walk, stop after each event and say what happened
- Tell a recount using sequenced pictures
- Use picture supported recount and group photos/drawings to introduce text structure, e.g. class booklet produced from school trip, a news photo of an event

Joint/guided construction

- Identify pictures corresponding to action verbs
- Sequence pictures from an oral recount
- Label picture sequences with time markers
- Question students about what time events occurred to cue retelling of events

Independent construction

- Listen to a recount and number pictures accordingly
- Answer comprehension questions relating to people, events etc.
- Retell events from a trip or news event in correct sequence, using photos
- Tell class about weekend activities
- Listen to recount and complete cloze activities

ORAL INTERACTION 6. can listen, respond to and give a simple recount

Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Friday, Saturday
Common nouns	e.g. house, presents, train
Prepositions:	e.g. nouse, presents, trum
Of place	in, on, to etc., e.g. to the city
Of time and date	in, at, after, before, on etc., e.g. after dinner, on Friday
Articles:	in, at, arter, before, on etc., e.g. arter anner, on maay
Definite	the, e.g. the city
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a field trip
Pronouns:	
Subject	I, you, we etc., e.g. We went to the city.
Possessives	our, my, your, her etc., e.g. our class, my birthday
Connectives and conjunct	
Conjunctions	and, but etc., e.g. I got some presents and then we went home.
	kers first, then, next, after, that etc., e.g. After that we went home
nine and sequence man	by boat.
Question formation:	by boat.
'wh'	what, where, when, who, how many, e.g. Where was the field
VVII	trip to?
Subject reversal	e.g. Was it on Friday?
'do' support	c.g. was it on mady:
with no auxiliary	e.g. Did you go by train?
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, I did. No, I didn't. Yes, she was. No, she wasn't.
Adjectives:	good, birthday, chocolate etc., e.g. It was a good field trip.
Commonly used past tens	
commonly used past ten.	Went, had, ate, played etc., e.g. We went on a field trip.
Contractions:	where's, what's, I'm, he's, she's etc., e.g.
Negation:	e.g. I didn't go by train.
negation.	

6. can listen, respond to and give a simple recount

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Text Structure - Recount	FIELD TRIP TO THE CITY	Language Features
Orientation	Last Friday our class went on a field trip.	Use of sentences
Events	We went to the city.	Use of action verbs e.g. went, had
	We saw lots of traffic.	Use of nouns to name people, places, things e.g. lunch, our class
	We had lunch in the park, then we visited the museum. We studied the dinosaur display .	Use of past tense, e.g. went, had, was
Re-orientation	After that we went home by train.	Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. by train, to the city
Evaluation	It was a good field trip.	

6 (c)
Text Structure - Recount Language Features: Text Structure - Recount Language Features Orientation Disaturday night my family and I went to my uncle's house. It was my birthday. Language Features Vents Vents Language Features Re-orientation Vert at failafel and I amb souviaki. Then we had chocolate birthday cake. Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. house, failafel, presents and then we went home.	Stage 1	ORAL INTERACTION 6. can lister	In respond to and give a simple recount		Language Outcomes	6 (d)
Text Structure - Recount MY BIRTHDAY Orientation On Saturday night my family and I went to my uncle's house. It was my birthday. Events We ate falafel and lamb souvlaki. Then we had chocolate birthday cake. Re-orientation After dinner I got some birthday presents and then we went home.	ext Structure and Language Fe	atures: Example 2				
MY BIRTHDAY Use of sentences Orientation On Saturday night my family and I went to my uncle's house. It was my birthday. Use of action verbs, e.g. went, ate, got Events We ate falafel and lamb souvlaki. Then we had chocolate birthday cake. Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. house, falafel, presents Re-orientation After dinner I got some birthday presents and then we went home. Use of past tense, e.g. went, was, had						
EventsWe ate falafel and lamb souvlaki. Then we had chocolate birthday cake.Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. house, falafel, presentsRe-orientationAfter dinner I got some birthday presents and then we went home.Use of past tense, e.g. went, was, had			On Saturday night my family and I went to my uncle's	Use of sentences		
we went home.	Eve	ents	We ate falafel and lamb souvlaki. Then we had	Use of nouns to name people,	-	
ose of daverbidi pinases, e.g. to my diffee s house, of saturday hight.	Re-o	orientation				ght.

English Language Intensive Programme

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Listen and respond to a simple description
- Give a simple description, e.g. house, friend, place, equipment
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple description

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

Family, literature themes, home, school, local environment, clothing, body, places, classroom, friends, countries, literature characters, self, food, equipment, landmarks (national and international)

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Listen to a description and draw item/complete matrix
- Answer comprehension questions relating to physical details
- Describe a person/character/setting from a story
- Choose an object and describe to class
- Choose correct item from picture bank

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model generic structure by giving descriptions of objects/people emphasise adjectives of colour, size and shape
- Model use of 'to be' / 'to have' in present tense
- Demonstrate and practise use of personal pronouns by substituting for student names
- Extend descriptions to scenes/places with emphasis on singular/plural nouns and 'there is', 'there are'

Joint/guided construction

- Use sentence beginnings it is/it has to generate descriptive sentences
- Identify the object/person being described
- Use magazine pictures, textbook diagrams, postcards of landmarks (national and international) in groups or pairs to describe people, objects
- Play '20 questions', 'I Spy', 'Guess Who', 'Guess What'

- Listen to a description and draw item/complete matrix
- Answer comprehension questions relating to physical details
- Describe a family member/character from a story
- Choose an object and describe to class

ORAL INTERACTION 7. can listen, respond to and give a simple description

Grammar Scone	
Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Mandarin
Common nouns	e.g. bike, holder
Adjectives:	e.g. metal, bright
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, on, at , up etc., e.g. at the back, up the steep hills
Of purpose	in, at, after, for etc., e.g. for my school bag
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the weekend
Indefinite	a, e.g. a leather cover
Pronouns:	
Subject	I, you, we, it etc., e.g. he also speaks a little English, it's much faster
Possessives	my, your, her etc., e.g. my bike
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those etc., e.g. This bike's better
Conjunctions:	
of addition	and, e.g. There's a mirror on each side and a light at the front
of reason	It's better than my old bike because it has more gears
Simple present:	e.g. The seat has a leather cover, Mike speaks Mandarin.
Negation:	e.g. He is not tall.
Question formation:	
'wh'	what, where, when, who, how many etc.,
	e.g. Where do you ride your bike?
Subject reversal	e.g. Is Mike from China or Korea?
Tag questions	e.g. He likes chicken, doesn't he?
Negation:	e.g. He doesn't like chicken.
Short answer form:	e.g. Yes I do. No I don't. Yes she is. No she isn't.
Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, she's, e.g. It's much faster.

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1

		Language Features
Text structure - Description	ΜΥ ΒΙΚΕ	Use of timeless present typical of descriptions of objects
Introduction - identifies and classifies	My bike's a mountain bike. It has a bright red frame and black handlebars. There's a mirror on each side and a light at the front	Use of relating verbs to link qualities of object to the object e.g. It has
	for night time.	a leather cover
Description	There are 12 gears on my bike so it's easy to ride up the steep hills. The seat has a leather cover.	Use of verbal contractions as a feature of oral language e.g. it's, (it is) bike's (bike is)
Evaluation (optional)	There's a metal holder on the back for a water bottle and a carrier for my school bag.	Use of prepositional phrases to show where things are and what they are for e.g. on the back, for night time
	This bike's better than my old bike because it has more gears and it's much faster.	Use of empty subject e.g. there is
		Use of adjectives to describe e.g. bright, red, leather, including comparatives e.g. better, faster
		Use of statements to give information e.g. My bike's a mountain bike.

		-
Sta	ge	

ORAL INTERACTION

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2

Note: This is an extended student response.

THE PERSON NEXT TO ME	Language Features
The person sitting next to me is Mike. He lives in Palmerston North and he comes from China.	Use of describing adjectives, e.g. straight, short, black
	Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, has, are
Mike speaks Mandarin and he also speaks a little English.	
	Use of simple conjunctions, e.g. and
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
brown and his face is oval. He is not tall.	Use of negatives to build description, e.g. he doesn't like chicken, he is not tall
His favourite food is McDonald's. He doesn't like chicken. His	
favourite colour is yellow.	Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. next to me, in Palmerston North
	The person sitting next to me is Mike. He lives in Palmerston North and he comes from China. Mike speaks Mandarin and he also speaks a little English. Mike has straight hair. His hair is short and black. His eyes are brown and his face is oval. He is not tall. His favourite food is McDonald's. He doesn't like chicken. His

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Listen and respond to a simple information report on a familiar topic
- Give a simple information report
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple information report

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

Animals, houses, plants, countries, matter, food chains, cities, local area, matter, environment, landmarks,

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Choose one picture of an object/animal from a group of pre-taught items and give a short information report
- 'Who am I?' game

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use picture cues/visual stimulus to build up field knowledge
- Practise 'wh' questions
- Deconstruct text explaining meaning of common headings, e.g. classification, description, appearance, behaviour, habitat etc.
- Point out difference between a description of, e.g. 'My Cat' and a scientific report about, e.g. 'Cheetahs'
- Model language features appropriate to generic structure

Joint/guided construction

- Construct semantic maps using pre-taught headings
- Respond to and ask 'wh' questions in groups/pairs using pictures
- Classify a range of objects/pictures according to differences or similarities
- Play guessing games, e.g. '20 questions', 'blindfold game' (Students are either blindfolded and describe an object or shut their eyes and choose an object from a blindbox and describe it.)

- Choose an animal/object and give a short prepared report
- Listen to report and fill in matrix under appropriate headings
- Ask and respond to 'wh' questions to elicit information, e.g. barrier games using picture stimuli

Stage 1	ORAL INTERACTION		Language Outcomes	8 (b)
ellige !	8. can listen, respond to and give a simple i	nformation report		0 (0)
Grammar Scope				
Nouns:				
Proper nouns	e.g. Afghanistan, Kabul, New Zealand			
Common nouns	e.g. teeth			
Plural	e.g. insects			
Countable and uncounta	ble			
(depending on context)	e.g. skin (uncountable) islands (countable)			
Note - tuatara is the singular ar	nd plural form - it is a Māori word, so it does not have an "s" for the plural			
Prepositions:				
Of place	in, on etc., e.g. under the ground, in Asia			
Of time	e.g. at night			
Articles:				
Definite	the, e.g. the capital			
Indefinite	a, e.g. a nice city			
Zero (no) article with une	countable nouns			
Pronouns:				
Subject	they, it etc., e.g. They eat insects.			
Possessives	its, their etc., e.g. Their claws are long.			
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. This is a reptile. That's the capital.			
Connectives and conjunct	ons:			
-	and, but, or, because etc., e.g. They eat small mammals, and birds' eggs.			
/erbs:				
Present tense	To be and to have, e.g. They are reptiles. They have hard scaly skin.			
Simple present of other				
verbs related to topic	e.g. They live in burrows.			
Negation:	e.g. It doesn't live in the water.			
Question formation:				
'wh'	What, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. What does it			
	look like? How many legs does it have?			
Subject reversal	e.g. ls it a mammal?			
'do' support				
with no auxiliary	e.g. Does it have fur?			
Adjectives:	big, small, long, native etc., e.g. They are native New Zealand animals.			
Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, she's etc., e.g. What's the capital?			

Stage 1

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Text Structure - Description

General Statement - identifies and classifies the subject

Description

AFGHANISTAN

Afghanistan is a Muslim country.

It is in the Northern Hemisphere, in Asia. The capital of Afghanistan is Kabul. It is a big city.

Many of the buildings have been damaged by war.

Language Features

Use of timeless present, typical of scientific writing

Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. Muslim, Northern, nice

Use of statements to give information (all sentences in the text are statements)

Use of relating verbs, e.g. is

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. in Asia

ORAL INTERACTION

8. can listen, respond to and give a simple information report

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2



Text Structure - Description

General Statement - identifies and classifies

Description - includes appearance, food, habitat etc.

TUATARA

Tuatara are reptiles. They are native New Zealand animals. Tuatara are only found on some small New Zealand islands.

They have hard scaly skin for protection, and sharp teeth. They eat insects, small mammals and birds' eggs. They live in burrows, which are holes under the ground. They are active at night. Tuatara can live up to 100 years.

Language Features

Use of timeless present typical of scientific writing

Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. hard, scaly, sharp, active

Use of statements to give information (all sentences in the text are statements)

Use of action verbs, e.g. eat, live

Use of relating verbs to link parts of the body to the tuatara, e.g. They have hard scaly skin and sharp teeth.

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. up to 100 years, in burrows, for protection

Use of detailed noun groups to build up description e.g. some small New Zealand islands; insects, small mammals, and birds' eggs

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Listen and respond to a simple procedure
- Retell a simple procedure
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple procedure

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

Cooking, following instructions, sports, leisure activities, school, crafts, model making, experiments, artwork, computer literacy, map reading, First Aid, health and safety

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Number pictures not previously used while listening to a procedure
- Retell a procedure given a set of sequenced pictures not previously used
- Group oral report at end of experiment
- Demonstrate a First Aid or safety procedure

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Make items, e.g. cooking/craft activity and model generic structure by retelling procedure
- Use a set of sequenced pictures to tell a procedure and elicit a title, e.g. 'Washing your hands'
- Use physical props to teach prepositional phrases
- Use mime and gesture to model imperative verbs

Joint/guided construction

- Respond physically to instructions with appropriate mime/gestures
- Sequence pictures from a familiar procedure and then use to prompt instructions
- Use cue cards with initial imperatives to practise giving instructions
- Use cue cards to instruct partners to perform actions

- Number pictures while listening to a procedure
- Explain a missing step from a picture sequence, with a step left out (blank picture)
- Retell a procedure given a set of sequenced pictures
- Listen to a procedure and choose the appropriate title
- Take turns to orient new students to school routines, e.g. order at canteen, set up exercise books correctly

ORAL INTERACTION

9. can listen, respond to and retell a simple procedure

Grammar Scope	
•	
Nouns:	
Common nouns	e.g. water, cup, teabag
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, on etc., e.g. in jug, on tripod
Of time and date	in, at, after, before etc., e.g. after 6 minutes
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the mat
Indefinite	a, e.g. a cup
Pronouns:	
Possessives	my, your, her etc., e.g. your recipe, my instructions
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. This is the recipe. That's the experiment.
Simple conjunctions:	and etc., e.g. Turn on gas and light burner.
Imperatives:	take, put, boil, add etc., e.g. Put the teabag in the cup.
Negation:	e.g. Don't turn on the gas.
Question formation:	5
` 'wh'	what, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. What do you do first?
	When do you turn on the gas?
Subject reversal	e.g. Is the temperature higher?
'do' support	- g
with no auxiliary	e.g. Does the water boil?
Modal 'can'	e.g. Can you hear the dial tone?
Adjectives:	big, small, long, round etc., e.g. Take a big bowl.
Quantifiers:	very, some etc., e.g. very hot, some water
Sequence markers:	first, then, next etc., e.g. First put water in the jug.
Adverbs:	quietly, carefully, slowly, well etc., e.g. Watch carefully,
Adverbs.	Walk in quietly.
Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, she's etc., e.g. What's the first step?
Simple contractions.	what 3, 1 m, ne 3, she 3 etc., e.g. what 5 the mist step?

English Language Intensive Programme

ORAL INTERACTION

Text Structure and Language Features: Examples 1 and 2

Text Structure - Instructions

Goal or aim	Example 1 H	OW TO USE A PHONE CARD	Language Features	Goal or aim	Example 2 HOW	TO ENTER THE CLASSROOM	Language Features
Materials and equipment (optional) Steps to accomplish goal	 Lift receiver. Insert card. Listen for dial tone. 		Use of nouns and noun groups, e.g. card, dial tone Use of commands, e.g. listen, talk, lift Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. for dial tone Use of action verbs, e.g. insert, lift, dial Use of sequencing system to order method, e.g. 1, 2, 3	Materials and equipment (optional) Steps to accomplish goal	 Line up. Walk in quietly. Sit down quietly. 		Use of nouns, e.g. books, pens Use of commands, e.g. line up, walk, sit down Use of adverbs to say how to carry out the action, e.g. quietly Use of action verbs, e.g. sit down, walk Use of sequencing system to order method, e.g. 1, 2, 3
	4. Dial number. 5. Talk.				 4. Take out your books and pens. 5. Put your bag on the floor. 		9

Text Structure - Instructions

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 3

Text Structure - Procedure Goal or aim

Materials/equipment

Steps to accomplish goal

IU WAKE BLACK	TEA WITH A TEA BAG
Materials/equipment: teabag, boiling water, jug, cup	1. Put water in jug.
2. Boil water.	3. Put cup on table.
T.S.	
4. Put teabag in cup.	5. Pour boiling water into cup.
6. Leave teabag for 30 seconds.	7. Take out teabag.

Language Features

Use of nouns, e.g. jug, water, teabag

Use of commands, e.g. put, pour, leave

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. into cup, for 30 seconds

Use of action verbs, e.g. take out, pour

Use of sequencing system to order method, e.g. 1, 2, 3

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 4



10 (a)

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Listen and respond to a simple narrative, e.g. short stories, picture books, graded readers
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple narrative

(Note: Narratives can be fictional or factual and can be literary or non-literary)

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

Myths/legends, films, fables, literature themes, plays, songs, events which involve a problem and resolution

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Listen to a narrative without pictures then correctly sequence pictures, or identify which stage is missing from a picture sequence.
- Teacher/student interview using 'wh' questions
- Listen to a narrative (in recorded form) with a missing stage and explain to a partner what is missing.

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use picture cues to elicit/build field knowledge and to model emotive and descriptive language
- Read simple narratives to introduce generic structure with visual prompts/picture support
- Model 'wh' questions/answers and link to relevant text structure
- Listen to a number of narratives to focus attention on the complication or orientation in each

Joint/guided construction

- Identify a character from a spoken text, e.g. 'Who said/did that?
- Use picture sequence to retell a narrative, in pairs
- Add/replace adjectives, adverbs and verbs to expand descriptions of people, places, events
- Respond to a variety of comprehension questions

- Listen to a narrative and sequence pictures of events
- Listen to sections of a narrative and correctly identify each stage
- Teacher/student interview using 'wh' questions
- Use picture books to locate text structure stages
- Role play a narrative and identify stages

Grammar Scope

Nouns: Proper nouns Common nouns Of place Definite Indefinite Subject Object Possessives Simple conjunctions:

Prepositions: Articles: **Pronouns:**

Verbs:

- Simple past Past continuous Imperatives Negation: **Ouestion formation:** 'wh'
- Subject reversal 'do' support with no auxiliary Modal 'can' Simple contractions: Adjectives: **Quantifiers:** Sequence markers: Direct and reported speech:

e.g. Sahar, Samira e.g. wind, sun, house in, on etc., e.g. in the garden, on the corner the, e.g. the garden a, e.g. a man I, you, we etc., e.g. I'll show you him, her, us, you etc., e.g. I'll show you my, your, her etc., e.g. She meets her friends. and, but, because, when etc., e.g. Then the sun came out and it was very hot.

e.g. had, took off, held e.g. Samira was walking. e.g. "Go inside and prove it." e.g. 'You're not a ghost are you?'

What, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. Where is the man walking? Who's in the story? e.g. Is this a good book?

e.g. Do you like the characters? e.g. Can the wind get the man's coat off? what's, I'm, he's, she's, e.g. What's your name? e.g. old, haunted, front, harder very, some etc., e.g. very hot first, then, next etc., e.g. then they saw a man e.g. He said he was happy. 'Okay then I'll show you,' she answered.

Saying thinking and opinion verbs:

Short answers: Adverbs:

e.g. Did you like the story? I thought it was good. e.g. Yes I did. No I didn't. e.g. quietly, tightly

ORAL INTERACTION 10. can listen and respond to a simple narrative

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



THE WIND AND THE SUN

The wind and the sun had an argument about

Then they saw a man walking in the park.

They said that the stronger one could get the

Then the sun came out and it was very hot.

"You see," said the sun, "persuasion is better

The man took off his hat and coat.

man's coat off. The wind blew harder and harder but the man held onto his hat and coat tightly.

who was stronger.

than force."

Text Structure - Narrative (fictional)

Orientation - includes main characters

Complication

Resolution

Coda

Language Features Use of past tense verbs, e.g. was, saw, blew

Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. wind, sun, park

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. in the park

Use of action verbs, e.g. blew, held, took off

Use of adverbs, e.g. tightly

Use of comparative adjectives, e.g. stronger, harder

Use of saying verbs, e.g. They said

Use of sequencing words, e.g. then

Use of simple conjunctions, e.g. but, and

Use of pronouns, e.g. who was stronger

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2



Text Structure - Fictional narrative	HAUNTED HOUSE?	Language Features
Orientation	One day a girl named Samira walked home from school. She met her friends Yen, Lin and Sahar.	Use of action verbs, e.g. met, went, stayed, watched
		Use of saying verbs, e.g. said, answered
Complication	They told her the old house on the corner of the street was haunted. She said "No, it's not. There are no ghosts!" Her friends said, "If there are no ghosts then go inside and prove it." "Okay	Use of direct speech, e.g. "Are you alright?"
	then, I'll show you. I'm not scared!" she answered. Samira's friends stayed outside in the garden and watched.	Use of word families to build information, e.g. ghosts, haunted, scared
	Samira went up to the front door. She knocked – quietly at first, then louder. The door opened suddenly. Samira fell through the	Use of time sequencers, e.g. then louder
	open door and screamed loudly. She looked up and saw a white haired old lady. Samira was very scared. The woman came closer.	Use of adverbs, e.g. suddenly, quietly
	"Are you alright?" she asked.	Use of adjectives, e.g. old, haunted, scared
Resolution	Samira smiled and said "You're not a ghost are you?" Samira turned to show her friends but when they looked back at the house, no one was there.	Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. from school, up to the door

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Stage 1

Reading, Understanding and Responding

Suggested Teaching Components

- Identify and say basic sound/letter correspondences, for example:
 initial consonants, e.g. 'p', 'b', 'd',
- common clusters, e.g. 'cl', 'fr', 'ch'
- diphthongs, e.g. 'ay'
- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Hold book/worksheet the right way and turn pages from front to back
- Locate beginning and end of a book
- Identify and say letters of alphabet in and out of sequence
- Identify numerals and ordinals in context of date and time
- Locate letters, words, lines, headings etc.
- Use computer programmes to practise confirming sound letter/cluster correspondences

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or experiences

Early phase factual readers on all curriculum topics, reading back dictated self-generated text, (written down by teacher, based on language experience approach), calendars, captions on pictures library sections, personal dictionary, colour wheel, graphs, ID cards, numbers, lab safety, signs, First Aid instructions

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Listen to text, track and circle words, headings, paragraphs etc.
- Put lists of words in alphabetical order

(Many of the teaching and learning strategies can be adapted for assessments.)

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model elements of fiction and non-fiction books, e.g. title, contents, index, pages, mathematical symbols etc.
- Model different elements of text, e. g. full stops, letters, words, lines, paragraphs, poems etc.
- Display date, alphabet
- Read along with a teacher, focus on reading in chunks.

Joint/guided construction

- Say, sing, sequence alphabet (chorus, individual, flash cards etc.)
- Listen to audio text while tracking written text
- Develop and display word banks using wall charts (can be colour coded for word functions)
- Word games to identify, spell and put in alphabetical order, e. g. Hangman, Find the 5 letter words etc.

- Matching written dates with numerical forms
- Match cut up sentences to original text, words, phrases
- Sequence a short text cut up into headings, lines etc.
- Develop sight vocabulary using picture crosswords, Scrabble, word shapes, Bingo etc.

one.

Grammar Scope

e.g. book, cover, author, illustrator
in, on, to etc., e.g. to page 1, on the cover
the, e.g. the cover
a, etc., e.g. a book
l, you, we etc., e.g. We are going to listen
it, me, them, us etc., e.g. Point to it.
my, your, her etc., e.g. your worksheet, your name
this, that, these, those etc., e.g. Take out this book, not that one
and, but, because etc., e.g. There's a blue car and lots of trees.
e.g. There are two people. What colour is the car?
e.g. No, not that one.
What, where, who, how many etc., e.g. What can you see?
e.g. Are there two or three people?
Do you see the author's name?
e.g. Yes there are, No there aren't
e.g. blue, fine, cloudy, rainy
e.g. blue, fine, cloudy, rainy
e.g. blue, fine, cloudy, rainy carefully etc., e.g. look carefully
e.g. blue, fine, cloudy, rainy carefully etc., e.g. look carefully she's, there's, that's etc., e.g. That's right. There's a blue car.
e.g. blue, fine, cloudy, rainy carefully etc., e.g. look carefully she's, there's, that's etc., e.g. That's right. There's a blue car. existential 'be' +noun:
e.g. blue, fine, cloudy, rainy carefully etc., e.g. look carefully she's, there's, that's etc., e.g. That's right. There's a blue car. existential 'be' +noun: e.g. There are two people. There's a blue car.

Suggested Teaching Components

- Identify and say basic sound/letter correspondences, for example:
 initial consonants, e.g. 'p', 'b', 'd',
- common clusters, e.g. 'cl', 'fr', 'ch'
- diphthongs, e.g. 'ay'
- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Locate beginning/end of sentences
- Track/follow a simple recount
- Repeat/read a simple modelled recount
- Understand and respond to events from a simple recount
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple recount
- Use computer programmes to practise confirming sound letter/cluster correspondences

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

New Zealand and world history, family and home events, recent news events, sporting and cultural school events, local events, accidents

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Match the picture/person/object to the written recount
- Cloze exercises as above
- Draw pictures based on written recounts
- Sequence events
- Match different verbs with the subjects e.g. Hongi Hika, fought, died we (family) cooked, cleaned, ate
- Retell the recount to a partner who checks off the main events.

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress through teacher read, reading with teacher etc. paying attention to phonics
- Build field/topic knowledge using picture cues
- Model cueing beginning and end of sentences
- Demonstrate text structure using visual prompts

Joint/guided construction

- Read jointly written recounts of class activity
- Sequence events using time line, story map etc.
- Play games, e.g. barrier, clozes of verb phrases or temporal markers etc.
- Match written text to photos/pictures
- Oral questioning to check comprehension

- Follow recorded reading
- Sequence cut up recount into its generic structure
- Unscramble sentences from a familiar recount
- Answer true/false, yes/no, 'wh' and multiple choice questions and simple 3 level guides
- Match beginning to end of sentences
- Punctuate recount

Grammar Scope	
Responding to recount	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. England, Whangaroa
Common nouns	e.g. people
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, on, etc., e.g. in Northland
Of time and date	in, at, after, before, on etc., e.g. in 1837, at 4 o'clock
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the cooking
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a gunshot
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we etc., e.g. I did not come to school
Object	him, her, them, us etc., e.g. would help them win battles
Possessives	my, your, her etc., e.g. my grandparents, his tribe
Simple connectives:	
conjunctions	addition, contrast, and, but, etc., e.g. first, then, next, last etc., e.g. Finally, in 1828
Time and sequence:	First I helped her.
Question formation:	
'wh'	What, where, why, who, how many etc., e.g. Why didn't you
	come to school?
Subject reversal	e.g. Was it on Friday?
'do' support	5
with no auxiliary	e.g.Did you stay at home?
Negation:	e.g.I did not come to school.
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, I did. No, I didn't. Yes, she was. No she wasn't.
Adjectives:	e.g. great, early, famous
Past tense verbs:	e.g. fought, got up, was shot, helped, did not come
Punctuation:	e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas,
	paragraphs
Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, she's etc., e.g. What's the warrior's name?

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 12. can read, understand and respond to a simple recount

Stage 1



Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Text Structure - Recount		Language Features
	CHINESE NEW YEAR	
Orientation	Last Friday I did not come to school. It was Chinese New Year.	Use of sentences
onentation		Use of action verbs, e.g. got up, helped
Events	On Friday morning I got up very early to help my mother.	
	First I helped her with the cooking. Then we had to clean the house because many visitors were coming.	Use of past tense, e.g. had, arrived, was
	house because many visitors were coming.	Use of adverbial phrases to say when and where, e.g. at 4 o'clock,
Reorientation	At 4 o'clock my grandparents arrived. At 6 o'clock everyone	on Friday, to school
	was there and we ate and ate to celebrate the Year of the	Use of time connectives to sequence events, e.g. first, then
	Dragon.	Use of time connectives to sequence events, e.g. hist, then
Evaluation	It was a great day.	Use of adverbs, e.g. there
		Use of conjunctions or and
		Use of conjunctions, e.g. and

Use of nouns to name people, places and things, e.g. Chinese New Year, mother

	FANDING AND RESPONDING In read, understand and respond to a simple recount	Language Outcomes 12 (d)
Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2		
Text Structure - Historical Recount	HONGI HIKA	Language Features
Orientation	Hongi Hika was a famous Māori warrior and leader. He was born in Northland in 1772.	Use of sentences Use of action verbs, e.g. fought, spread, win, died
Provides background information	In his life he fought many battles and helped his tribe spread the use of muskets. He knew that these guns would help them win battles. He also taught his people how to use different tools to get better food crops. He visited England in 1820, where he helped to write a Māori dictionary.	Use of past tense, regular e.g. visited, helped irregular, e.g. knew, taught Use of adverbial phrases to say when and where, e.g. in 1827, in Northland
Record of events	Then, in May 1827, he fought a fierce battle against the people of Whangaroa. Hongi was shot in the chest with a gunshot from a musket, but he did not die in this battle. He tried to keep on planning battles, but he became very sick. Finally, in 1828, he died from the bullet wound.	Use of time connectives to sequence events, e.g. then, finally Use of word families (collocations) to build topic, e.g. warrior, battle, musket, die, fought Use of nouns to name people, places and things, e.g. Hongi Hika, warrior
Reorientation	Hongi Hika is still remembered today by his people as a great leader.	Use of conjunctions, e.g. and, (additive) but (contrastive)

Suggested Teaching Components

- Identify and say basic sound/letter correspondences, for example: - initial consonants, e.g. 'p', 'b', 'd',
- common clusters, e.g. 'cl', 'fr', 'ch', 'st'
- diphthongs, e.g. 'ay'
- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Locate beginning/end of sentences
- Track/follow a simple description
- Repeat/read a simple modelled description
- Individually read aloud a simple description
- Understand and respond to events from a simple description
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple description

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

family, clothing, places, home, body, classroom, school, literature themes/ characters, local environment, self, family, friends

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Match the picture/person/object to the written description
- Cloze exercises as above
- Draw pictures based on written descriptions

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress through teacher read, choral read etc. paying attention to phonics
- Build field knowledge using visual stimuli, adjective cards, jazz chants etc.
- Classify vocabulary according to characteristics, actions etc.
- Demonstrate text structure using visual prompts

Joint/guided construction

- Draw mind maps using language to describe people, places, events
- Classify appropriate adjectives under nouns, e.g. hair-long, wavy, straight
- Play games, e.g. consonant cluster game, Snakes and Ladders, card games based on 'Snap' to recognise initial and final consonant sounds etc. words with same sounds
- Read jointly written description of class members

- Match written description to visual texts
- Complete a matrix of attributes and features of characters etc.
- Cloze activities of verbs, adjectives, antonyms, synonyms etc.
- Answer true/false, yes/no, 'wh' and multiple choice questions, simple 3 level guides

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Oliver, London
Common nouns	e.g. face, glasses
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, on, etc., e.g. in the orphanage
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the shoes
Indefinite	a, e.g. a small nose
Verbs:	
Simple present	to be and to have and other verbs, e.g. It is short. She has a small
	nose. She wears glasses.
Negation	e.g. He doesn't have a mother.
Question formation:	
'wh'	What, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. Where is she
	going? What does it look like??
Subject reversal	e.g. Is his name Oliver?
'do' support	
with no auxiliary	e.g. Does she have curly hair?
Adjectives:	e.g. oval, curly, short, small, cold, scared
Quantifiers:	e.g. very, some etc., e.g. some shoes
Punctuation:	e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas,
c' I i i'	paragraphs
Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, she's etc., e.g. What's his name?
Pronouns:	aha itata any Itinahant Chahan ambuhain
Subject	she, it etc., e.g. It is short. She has curly hair.
Possessives	my, your, her etc., e.g. my name, my feet
simple connectives and c	conjunctions (of addition, contrast and reason):
	and, but, or, because etc., e.g. I live in a place for poor children because my mother and father are dead.
	Decause my mouner and rather die Gedu.

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1

Text Structure - Description

Introduction

Description

DESCRIBING FACES She has an oval face. She has curly hair. It is short. She has a small nose and large eyes. She wears glasses and has long earrings.

Language Features Use of describing adjectives, e.g. short, curly, small, long
Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, has
Use of conjunctions, e.g. and
Use of nouns, e.g. eyes, glasses
Use of present tense, e.g. has, is, wears
Use of nouns to name people, places and things, e.g. glasses, nose, eyes, earrings

13. can read, understand and respond to a simple description

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2

Text Structure - Description (literary)

Introduction

Description - including circumstances and feelings

OLIVER TWIST

My name is Oliver Twist. I am ten years old. I live in a place for poor children because my father and mother are dead. I have been here since I was a baby.

I hate living in the orphanage because we are always hungry and cold. Mr Bumble is in charge of the orphanage. He is very cruel and he often hits us. I wish I had a mother. I am going to run away to London. Language Features Use of describing adjectives, e.g. cold, hungry

Use of numbering adjectives, e.g. ten

Use of thinking verbs, e.g. hate, wish

Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, am

Use of action verbs, e.g. live, hits, going to run away

Use of conjunctions, e.g. because, (reason) and (additive)

Use of adverbs, e.g. often, always

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. in a place, to London

Suggested Teaching Components

- Identify and say basic sound/letter correspondences, for example:
 initial consonants, e.g. 'p', 'b', 'd',
- common clusters, e.g. 'cl', 'fr', 'ch', 'st'
- diphthongs, e.g. 'ay'
- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Locate beginning/end of sentences
- Track/follow a simple information report
- Repeat/read a simple modelled information report
- Individually read aloud a simple information report
- Understand and respond to events from a simple information report
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple information report

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any curriculum topic - animals, houses, plants, countries, cultures, cities, geometrical shapes, science apparatus, famous people, local environment, nutrition

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Complete a matrix from an information report
- Sequence a scrambled report
- Complete comprehension activities
- Label visual texts

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress through teacher read, group read etc. paying attention to phonics
- Build field knowledge using visual stimuli (diagrams, maps, photos)
- Model and label structures appropriately
- Model language features appropriate to text structure

Joint/guided construction

- Construct semantic maps of attributes, e.g. 'cheetahs-black spots, furry skins etc.'
- Complete cloze passages focusing on appropriate grammatical features
- Participate in a variety of comprehension tasks
- Match words to visual texts and words to written meanings

- Reconstruct a report
- Complete an information matrix
- Circle the odd word out, e.g. world-continent, countries, oceans, (star)
- Answer true/false, yes/no, 'wh' and multiple choice questions

Stage 1	READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDIN 14. can read, understand and respond	Language Outcomes	14 (b)
Grammar Scope			
Nouns:			
Proper nouns	e.g. Australia, Asia		
Common nouns	e.g. continents, country		
Prepositions:			
Of place	in, on, etc., e.g. in the world		
Articles:			
Definite	the, e.g. the Northern Hemisphere		
Indefinite	a, e.g. a country		
Pronouns:			
Subject	it etc., e.g. It is in the Northern Hemisphere.		
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. This is the largest. That's the smallest.		
Simple conjunctions:	and, but, or, because etc., e.g. It is hot in summer and cool in winter.		
Empty subject (there/it) +	+ existential 'be' + noun:		
	e.g. There are 22 countries in North America		
Verbs:	-		
Present	to be and to have, e.g. It is the largest. It has the most countries.		
Question formation:			
'wh'	What, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. Where is it? How many countries are there?		
Subject reversal 'do' support	e.g. Is it the largest continent?		
with no auxiliary	e.g. Does it have a hot summer?		
Adjectives:	e.g. hot, cool, small etc., e.g. It is a small continent.		
Quantifiers:	e.g. most, very, some etc., e.g. most countries		
Punctuation:	e.g. full stops, commas, upper/lower case, paragraphs, question marks		
Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, she's, it's etc., e.g. It's in Asia.		

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Text Structure - Information Report

General statement - identifies and classifies the subject

Description - includes location, size, population and climate

BANGLADESH

Bangladesh is a country in Asia.

It is in the Northern Hemisphere between the longitudes 88°E and 93°E. The nearest ocean is the Indian Ocean. Dacca is the capital city.

The total area is 144 000 square kilometres and the population is 120 million. Ninety-five per cent of the people are Muslim and five per are other religions.

The climate is hot in summer and cool in winter.

Language Features

Timeless present used, typical of much scientific writing, e.g. is, are, has

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. in Asia, in summer

Adjectives used to describe, e.g. capital, hot, cool

Sentences and statements used throughout

Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, has

Use of conjunctions, e.g. and

14. can read, understand and respond to a simple information report

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2



Text Structure - Information Report

General statement - identifies and classifies the subject

Description - includes continents and oceans

THE WORLD

There are seven continents in the world – Europe, Asia, North America, South America, Africa, Australia and Antarctica. There are also four large oceans -Pacific, Atlantic, Indian and Arctic.

Asia is the largest continent and Australia is the smallest. Africa has the most countries. It has 53 countries. Europe is a small continent with 25 countries. There are 22 countries in North America and 13 countries in South America. Australia is a continent, a country and an island.

Language Features

Timeless present used, typical of much scientific writing, e.g. is, are, has

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. in the world

Adjectives used, e.g. largest, smallest, large, small

Sentences and statements used throughout

Use of relating verbs, e.g. are, has

Use of conjunctions, e.g. and

- Identify and say basic sound/letter correspondences, for example:
 initial consonants, e.g. 'p', 'b', 'd',
- common clusters, e.g. 'cl', 'fr', 'ch', st
- diphthongs, e.g. 'ay'
- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Locate beginning/end of sentences
- Track/follow a simple procedure
- Repeat and read a simple modelled procedure
- Understand and respond to events from a procedure
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple procedure

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Cooking, following instructions, sports, First Aid, road safety, car repairs, leisure activities, crafts, school, Maths problems, drawing 2D shapes, science experiments, directions

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Match visual text to written text
- Sequence a cut up procedure
- Read and carry out a procedure
- Instruct a partner to carry out a procedure

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress through teacher read, choral read etc. paying attention to phonics
- Build on field knowledge using visual stimuli
- Model numbering steps, use of imperatives and use of adverbs
- Model text structures by using a range of authentic texts
- Model procedure

Joint/guided construction

- Sequence pictures into correct steps, e.g. 'How to make jelly'
- Play board games which use instruction cards
- Barrier activity: giving and responding to instructions
- Sound discrimination activities, e. g. 'Which word/picture has a different sound?'

- Sequence cut up list of instructions
- Match pictures to written instructions
- Follow worksheet of written instructions
- Cloze of verbs and temporal conjunctions

Stage 1

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 15. can read, understand and respond to a simple procedure

Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Common nouns	e.g. water, tablespoon
Prepositions:	5
Of place	in, on, etc., e.g. in oven, on sultanas
Of time and place	in, at, after, before etc., e.g. after heating, before adding
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the table
Pronouns:	
Object	it, them etc., e.g. Add brown sugar to it.
Possessives	my, your, her etc., e.g. your recipe, my instructions
Demonstratives:	e.g. this, that, these, those, e.g. This is the recipe.
Imperatives:	take, put, add etc., e.g. Take out the core.
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. What, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. What do you do first? When do you add the sultanas?
Subject reversal	e.g. Is the artpaper on the lino?
'do' support	a r. Do the cultures no in often the engle?
with no auxiliary Modal 'can'	e.g. Do the sultanas go in after the apple? e.g. Can you draw a pattern?
Adjectives:	clean, small, brown etc., e.g. clean roller.
Sequence markers:	first, then, next etc., e.g. First, put the paper on the table.
Punctuation:	e.g. upper/lower case, full stops, numbering, question marks,
i unctuation.	commas
Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, she's etc., e.g. What's the first step?
•	

English Language Intensive Programme

15. can read, understand and respond to a simple procedure


Stage 1		STANDING AND RESPONDING In read, understand and respond to	a simple procedure	La	inguage Outcomes	15 (d)
Text Structure and Language Fe	atures: Example 2					
Text St	ructure - Procedure	LINO PRIN	TING	Language Features		
Steps t	to accomplish goal	 Materials/Equipment newspaper, board, ink, lino, art paper, 1. Using a pencil, draw a pattern on the 2. Cut out the pattern with the lino cur 3. Put newspaper on the table. 4. Put the board on the newspaper. 5. Put the lino on the board. 6. Roll ink with a roller, for 2 minutes. 7. Roll ink onto lino. 8. Put art paper on inked lino. 9. Roll paper with clean roller. 10. Take paper off lino. 	e lino.	Use of nouns to name equ e.g. newspaper, table Use of commands, e.g. pu Use of adverbial phrases, with clean roller Use of technical language Use of action verbs, e.g. ta	it, roll e.g. on the board, e, e.g. roller, lino, ink	



Suggested Teaching Components

- Identify and say basic sound/letter correspondences, for example: - initial consonants, e.g. 'p', 'b', 'd'
- common clusters, e.g. 'cl', 'fr', 'ch', 'st'
- diphthongs, e.g. 'ay'
- Develop student awareness of and skill in appropriate intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features etc.
- Locate beginning/end of sentences
- Track/follow a simple narrative
- Repeat/read a simple modelled narrative
- Individually read aloud a simple modelled narrative
- Understand and respond to events from a simple narrative
- Follow the text structure and language features of a simple narrative

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Myths/legends, fables, literature, library visits, life events (but separate from recounts by inclusion of complication/problem and resolution)

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Sequence cut up narrative
- Match written text to pictures
- Answer a variety of comprehension questions

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Focus on cover/title/illustrations to elicit simple prediction
- Model pronunciation, intonation, rhythm and stress through teacher read, choral read etc. paying attention to phonics
- Build field knowledge using visual stimuli
- Use a range of illustrated texts to model text

Joint/guided construction

- Read an orientation and predict an outcome orally or construct a missing orientation for a text.
- Read then retell a narrative using visual cues
- Identify and replace the misplaced sentences from a group of short narratives or cut up and mix two similar fables and learners put correct sections together in correct order (Could be a Jigsaw reading exercise.)
- Choose the appropriate title from a list
- Sequence written and/or visual text

Independent construction

- Answer a variety of comprehension questions, complete a 3 level guide
- Match descriptors to characters, adverbs to actions etc. from a word bank
- Match visual text to written events
- Perform theatre reading of story
- Create a word chain for each of several of the head words in the text (e.g. **sheep** sheepskin, lamb etc, **wolf** sheepskin, planned, steal, sheep)

(These word chains will vary and may overlap, but learners should be able to explain the connection between the words in each chain)

Stage 1

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 16. can, read understand and respond to a simple narrative

Grammar Scope			
Nouns:		Adverbs:	e.g. everywhere, there, away
Proper nouns	e.g. Anna, Bosnia	Punctuation:	e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas,
Common nouns	e.g. wolf, farmhouse, friend		exclamation marks, paragraphs
Prepositions:		Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, who's etc., e.g. Who's in the story?
Of place	into, outside etc., e.g. into the yard, outside the hall	-	
Of time and date	on, in, at, after, before etc., e.g. on the last day		
Of purpose	for, from etc., e.g. for dinner		
Articles:			
Definite	the, e.g. the sheep		
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a wolf		
Pronouns:			
Subject	l, you, we, he etc., e.g. He put on a sheepskin.		
Object	him, her, us, them etc., e.g. He grabbed him.		
Possessives	my, your, her etc., e.g. his friends		
Demonstratives	this, that, these, those, e.g. that night		
Simple conjunctions:	and, but, because, when etc., e.g. It was dark and the farmer		
	thought the wolf was a fat sheep.		
Verbs:			
Simple past	e.g. went, were, had, took		
Past continuous	e.g. Everyone was going.		
Imperatives	e.g. 'Wait, wait Jose.'		
Negation	e.g. 'It's not what you think.'		
Question formation:			
'wh'	what, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. Where did the		
	wolf go? Who's in the story?		
Subject reversal	e.g. Is this a good story?		
'do' support			
with no auxiliary	e.g. Do you like the characters?		
Modal 'can'	e.g. Could Jose see Anna?		
Adjectives:	e.g. farewell, worried, dark, fat		
Direct speech:	e.g. 'Why weren't you outside?'		
Saying thinking and opin			
-	e.g. Did you like the story? I thought it was good.		
Short answers:	e.g. Yes I did. No I didn't.		
			16

Stage 1

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Text Structure - Narrative (fable)		Language Features
Orientation - includes main characters	A WOLF IN SHEEP'S CLOTHING A wolf had a plan to steal a sheep for his dinner.	Use of past tense verbs, e.g. had, went, wanted
Events	He put on a sheepskin and went into the yard with all the sheep. The sheep didn't know the wolf was there. He planned to wait until night time, then run away in the dark with a sheep.	Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. wolf, sheep, farmer, farmhouse Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. for his dinner, into the
Complication	That night in the farmhouse, the farmer's wife said she wanted to have roast lamb for dinner.	yard, to the kitchen Use of action verbs, e.g. steal, went, grabbed, took
Resolution	The farmer went into the yard. It was dark and the farmer thought the wolf was a fat sheep. He grabbed him, killed him and took him to the kitchen to cook for dinner.	Use of adverbs, e.g. there, that night Use of adjectives, e.g. roast, dark, fat
Coda - Moral/Lesson	Never pretend to be what you are not.	Use of saying verbs, e.g. said Use of thinking verbs, e.g. thought, didn't know, planned Use of simple conjunctions, e.g. and

Text Structure - Narrative (factual)	THE SURPRISE PARTY	Language Features
Orientation - includes main characters and place and time	Jose and Anna met at school. They were friends and went everywhere	Use of past tense verbs, e.g. met, were, went
	together. Anna was from Bosnia and Jose was from Chile.	Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. Jose, Bosnia, hall, party
Events	It was Friday on the last day of term. Everyone was going to the end of term disco. Jose told Anna he would meet her outside the hall before the disco.	Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. at school, from Chile, on
		the last day
Complication	Jose went to meet Anna outside the hall. She wasn't there. He was worried. He went inside and found her talking to his friends. He was angry and shouted at her, "Why weren't you outside?" He walked away before	Use of action verbs, e.g. went, walked, was going
	she could answer.	Use of adverbs, e.g. everywhere, there, away
Resolution	His friend Mikos ran after him.	Use of adjectives, e.g. last, worried, angry, surprise
Resolution	"Wait, wait Jose! It's not what you think. Anna was asking us to go to your surprise birthday party." Jose smiled. He walked back and gave Anna	Use of saying verbs, e.g. asking, shouted, answer
	a hug. "Sorry Anna," he said.	Use of direct speech, e.g. "Why weren't you outside?"

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Stage 1 Writing

Note. Some of these skills may already have been mastered at the Foundation level

Suggested Teaching Components

- Employ correct pencil grip and good posture
- Form letters of Roman alphabet paying attention to size, shape, slope and spacing
- Copy Roman script with accuracy acknowledging basic conventions
- Copy personal information accurately, e.g. name, address, date of birth, telephone number etc.
- Copy short list/simple sentence accurately
- Copy numerals accurately.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

All (Connect to the curriculum as much as possible.)

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Copy information onto form
- Copy from board/other texts
- Record date daily

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model correct grip and posture with explicit instructions, e.g. sit on chair, finger position etc.
- Model letter formation emphasising line movements, up/down strokes etc.
- Make simple diary entries using print conventions i.e. L to R, top to bottom, upper/lower case etc.
- Write date on board daily

Joint/guided construction

- Practise letter formation (Use a guide for emergent writers as a teaching resource)
- Copy sentences putting in missing word/words
- Games, e.g. concentration, matching cards, word shapes
- Use computer technology to reinforce print conventions
- Rotate groups, e.g. group 1: matching numerals and words, group 2: How many words? etc

Independent construction

- Copying boxed personal information on simple form
- Copying sentences/words etc. from familiar topics, linked to the curriculum and to interpersonal contexts
- Tracing and copying upper and lower case using variety of mediums
- Writing for display (making posters, signs cards etc)

Stage 1	WRITING 17. can copy simple text with a degree of accura	acy and legibility	Language Outcomes	17 (b)
Grammar Scope				
Abbreviations:				
Titles Addresses Ordinals	e.g. Mr, Mrs, Ms e.g. Rd, St, Ave			
Punctuation: Upper/lower case	e.g. 1st Dec 2003 e.g. Blue Street			
Full stops Commas	•			
Question marks Strokes	, ? e.g. Unit 1/3 Small Street			
Dashes Numerals	e.g. Unit 1, 23-25 Birch St e.g. post code, address			
Alphabet	e.g. post code, address			

Suggested Teaching Components

- Write personal information in appropriate place on a simple form
- Write numerical information in numbers or words correctly in appropriate place on form
- Spell familiar vocabulary correctly, e.g. name, suburb etc.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Personal information in different contexts

Suggested Assessment Tasks

 Complete a formatted text following instructions, e.g. block letters, numerical answers etc.

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model language appropriate to forms, e.g. office use only, block letters, etc. using a variety of mediums
- Model placing information completely and correctly on a variety of authentic and/or simplified forms, e.g. permission notes, library cards etc.
- Model conventions, e.g. use block letters, ticks, circles etc.

Joint/guided construction

- Five word spelling test (daily) using vocabulary appropriate to personal information and simple curriculum topics
- Match and record personal information with appropriate prompt cards, e.g. Family Name: Lu, DOB: 5/5/82
- Listening to recording and writing names, addresses etc.
- Dictation or simple dictagloss based on personal information using forms
- Write down a short list of words from a curriculum topic read out by a partner (check for accuracy afterwards)

Independent construction

- Dictation or dictagloss based on personal information or simple curriculum topics
- Class survey (matrix) re personal information
- Rewrite from all lower case to include correct use of upper case
- Copy out lists of key words
- Complete a simple formatted text

Stage 1	WRITING 18. can complete a simple formatted text	Language Outcomes 18 (
Grammar Scope		
obreviations:		
Titles	e.g. Mr, Mrs, Ms	
Addresses	e.g. Rd, St, Ave	
inctuation:		
Upper/lower case	e.g. Burnside High School	
Strokes		
Dashes	- -	
Numerals		
Full stops	•	
Commas	•	
Question Marks	, ?, e.g. Where do you live?	
uns:	?, e.g. where do you live?	
	a a Discortan Christohurch	
Proper	e.g. Riccarton, Christchurch	
Common	e.g. school, date	
peratives:	e.g. Use block letters.	

LIBRARY APPLICATION (USE BLOCK LETTERS)
School:
Name:
Address:
Post Code:
Home telephone number:
Class:
Student's signature:
Date:

Stage 1	WRITING 18. can complete a simple formatted text	Language Outcomes	18 (d)	
				Eng

			CLA	SS SURVEY		
Name	Country	Age	Sex	Favourite Sport	Favourite Food	Favourite Colour

This step should follow the reading of simple recounts, since these provide models for deconstruction and co-construction

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use appropriate pen colour
- Employ upper and lower case appropriately
- Use correct spacing between words/lines/paragraphs
- Set out work using appropriate layout, (from models) e.g. margins, date, headings, subheadings, bullet points, columns etc.
- Write in sentences using appropriate vocabulary
- Write using the text structure and language features of a simple recount
- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft

The text models are provided for joint study (deconstruction). They can also be used as additional reading models.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Field trips, family, occasions, holidays, my life, my journey (as a migrant) local environment, time, dates, seasons, special occasions, biographies (letters, journals), curriculum related topics

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Write a simple recount on personal experiences, e.g. 'My Morning/ Weekend', The sports match, A trip (or journey)
- Write a simple recount using visual stimulus
- Complete sentences from a fact sheet, then construct another text without support. (e.g _____ was born in ____. was a _____ More important thing he/she did was ____. died in _____.

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Build field knowledge using visual stimuli
- Model a range of simple recounts
- Deconstruct a simple recount
- Group write a recount using visual stimulus
- Joint/guided construction
- List events, participants and places and write sentences using temporal markers
- Write a group/pair/individual recount, have another group comment, then rewrite
- Sequence a modelled text
- Sequence photos from a field trip and write sentences
- Use scaffold to write a recount (see assessment task below)

Independent construction

- Complete cloze passages based on grammar focus items
- Write one to two sentences using visual cues
- Journal writing
- Illustrate/add text to experience
- Use content from 'wh' barrier game to write a recount

Cta	-	1
Sta	ge	; [

Cummun Saaaa	
Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Friday, Naenae
Common nouns	e.g. shower, shop, aviator
Prepositions:	
Of place	to, in, on etc., e.g. to Naenae
Of time and date	e.g. in, at, after, before, on etc. e.g. in 1824, after the flower show
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the big shop
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a flower show, a field trip
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we etc., l wake up
Object	him, her, us, them etc., Jean's mother took her
Possessives	e.g. my, your, her etc., e.g. my breakfast
Simple conjunctions:	and, but etc., e.g. I have a shower and eat my breakfast.
Time and sequence	first, then, next, last, finally etc., e.g. First we went to a big shop.
Question formation:	
'wh'	what, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. Where was the
	field trip to?
Subject reversal	e.g. Was it on Friday?
'do' support	
with no auxiliary	e.g. Did you go by train?
Negation:	e.g. I did not buy anything
Short Answer forms:	e.g. Yes, I did. No, I didn't. Yes, she was. No, she wasn't.
Adjectives:	e.g. good, kind, sports, flower, rich, poor
Adverbs:	e.g. away
Verbs:	
Present tense verbs	e.g. wake, have,
Commonly used	
Past tense verbs	e.g. went, looked, learned, was
Punctuation:	e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas,
	paragraphs
Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, she's etc., e.g. What's the pilot's name?

Text Structure - Recount	1. MY DAY	Language Features Use of sentences (present tense, to show timeless present)
Orientation	I wake up at 7 o'clock. I have a shower and eat my breakfast.	use of sentences (present tense, to show timeless present)
		Use of action verbs, e.g. wake up, catch
Record of events	At 8 o'clock I catch the bus to school.	Use of nouns to name people, places things, e.g. school, breakfast
	School starts at 8.45 and we have lunch at 1 o'clock.	ose of hours to hame people, places things, e.g. school, breaklast
		Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. to school, at 7 o'clock
Reorientation	School finishes at 3 o'clock and I get home at 4 o'clock.	

Text Structure - Recount	2. MY FIELD TRIP	Language Features Use of sentences
Orientation	Last Friday I went to a flower show in a big shop with my class.	Use of action verbs, e.g. went, looked
Record of events	First we looked at the beautiful flowers. Then my friends and I went to another part of the big shop and looked for	Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. my class, flower show, Naenae
	sports clothes. I didn't buy anything.	Use of past tense, e.g. went, looked, had
Reorientation - includes some evaluation	After the trip we went to the bus station and went back to Naenae on the bus. We had a good day.	Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. to a flower show, at 1 o'clock
		Use of conjunctions to sequence events in time, e.g. after the flower show

Stage 1

WRITING 19. can write a simple recount

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 3

Note. This more complex text can be written as a scaffold (see Writing - 19/a) with gaps left for sentence beginnings or key phrases and the rest of the text modelled by the teacher.

Text Structure - Biographical		Language Features	
recount	JEAN BATTEN	Use of sentences	
Orientation	Jean Batten was a famous New Zealand aviator (a person who is the pilot of a plane). Jean was born in 1909 in Rotorua.	Use of action verbs, e.g. flew, trained, learned, died	
Record of events	In 1929 Jean's mother took her to Australia for a holiday. Jean flew in an airplane with a famous Australian pilot, Charles Kingsford Smith. After that flight, Jean decided to become a	Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. pilot, journeys, airplane, dog bite	
	pilot herself.	Use of adjectives to add information to nouns e.g. famous, brave, clever	
	She learned to fly and made several journeys to many countries. She was the first woman to fly alone from England to Australia in 1934 then in 1935 she flew across the South Atlantic Ocean. Next, in 1936 she flew from England to New Zealand in a Gull airplane.	Use of past tense, e.g. was, flew, (irregular) moved (regular)	
Reorientation - includes some	Jean died in 1982, from a poisoned dog bite. She had been living alone for a long time.	Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. in 1936	
evaluation	She was a very brave and very clever aviator.	Use of conjunctions to sequence events in time, e.g. when, next, after	

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use appropriate pen colour
- Employ upper and lower case appropriately
- Use correct spacing between words/lines/paragraphs
- Set out work using appropriate layout, (from models) e.g. margins, date, headings, subheadings, bullet points, columns etc.
- Write in sentences using appropriate vocabulary
- Write using the text structure and language features of a simple description
- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft

Remember to teach the order of adjectives and other words in a noun group.

Article OR Pointing word	OR Possessive	quantity adj	opinion adj	factual adj
WHICH WHICH	WHOSE	HOW MANY	QUALITIES	QUALITIES
e.g. a OR these OR her	(Jean's)	two	wonderful	silver
comparing adj	classifying adj	noun/pronoun		

DEGREE WHAT TYPE WHAT or WHO Gull airplanes

(example modelled on B Derewianka – A Grammar Companion)

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any equipment for any curriculum subject, family, clothing, places, home, body, classroom, school, literature characters or places, local environment, plants/trees, self, friends, country of origin, a famous building or landmark

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use pictures to build field knowledge and word bank using visual stimuli
- Model a range of simple descriptions
- Deconstruct a simple description (focus on noun phrases/groups in particular)

Joint/guided construction

- Write a simple description of animals/other students/teachers, technology, science or PE equipment, characters or places from films/novels/stories etc. which can be used later in guessing games
- Use familiar visual texts etc. to construct a description (Postcards are a good source of text)
- Substitute/add an adjective to description from word bank (see above)
- Use questions to scaffold writing

Independent construction

- Write a description using information from a grid headings should be relevant to the object being described
- Write a scaffolded description using information from a class survey or given information
- Write about oneself, friend, house, character or anything else from the themes & topics box
- Use computer technology to reinforce editing concepts and correct text features and publishing skills

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Write a description on a familiar topic (known or taught topic)
- Write a description using visual cues

20. can write a simple description . Jose, Ji . hair, eyes, face face, eye . hair . hair . t to, in, on etc., e.g. next to me				
. hair, eyes, face face, eye s . hair				
. hair, eyes, face face, eye s . hair				
. hair, eyes, face face, eye s . hair				
. hair, eyes, face face, eye s . hair				
face, eye is . hair				
ns . hair				
. hair				
tt to, in, on etc., e.g. next to me				
, e.g. the person				
an, e.g. a striped t-shirt				
it, etc., e.g. He has very short black hair.				
my, your, her etc., e.g. his shoes, his face				
. is, comes, speaks, has				
. He isn't tall.				
-				
t 5, 1	sculine/feminine/(his/her) , 2nd, 3rd person – singular and plural) , that, these, those etc., e.g. This boy's name is Jose. , (additive) but, or, (contrastive) because (reason) , e.g. Ji lives in Napier and he comes from China. is, comes, speaks, has He isn't tall. straight, short, black, tall, striped , some etc., e.g. very short hair full stops, commas, upper/lower case, question marks, agraphs at's, I'm, he's, she's, e.g. What's his name?	, 2nd, 3rd person – singular and plural) , that, these, those etc., e.g. This boy's name is Jose. , (additive) but, or, (contrastive) because (reason) , e.g. Ji lives in Napier and he comes from China. is, comes, speaks, has He isn't tall. straight, short, black, tall, striped , some etc., e.g. very short hair full stops, commas, upper/lower case, question marks, agraphs	, 2nd, 3rd person – singular and plural) , that, these, those etc., e.g. This boy's name is Jose. , (additive) but, or, (contrastive) because (reason) , e.g. Ji lives in Napier and he comes from China. is, comes, speaks, has He isn't tall. straight, short, black, tall, striped , some etc., e.g. very short hair full stops, commas, upper/lower case, question marks, agraphs	, 2nd, 3rd person – singular and plural) , that, these, those etc., e.g. This boy's name is Jose. , (additive) but, or, (contrastive) because (reason) , e.g. Ji lives in Napier and he comes from China. is, comes, speaks, has He isn't tall. straight, short, black, tall, striped , some etc., e.g. very short hair full stops, commas, upper/lower case, question marks, agraphs

Text Structure - Description

Introduction

Description

otion	JOSE SANTOS	Lang Use o e.g. sl
	This boy's name is Jose Santos. He has very short black hair and a round face. He is very tall and his eyes are small but his mouth is big.	Use o
	He is wearing a striped t-shirt and his trousers are green. His shoes are brown.	Use o
		Use o eyes,

nguage Features

Use of describing (factual and classifying) adjectives, e.g. short, black, round, tall

Use of linking verbs, e.g. is, are, has

Use of simple conjunctions, e.g. and, but

Use of nouns to name people, e.g. face, places, things, eyes, mouth, trousers, Jose Santos

Use of present tense, e.g. has, is, are

Text Structure - Description	ABOUT JI	Language Features Use of describing (factual and classifying) adjectives, e.g. little, straight, short, black
Introduction	The person sitting next to me is Ji. Ji lives in Napier and he comes from China. He speaks Cantonese and he also speaks a	Use of linking verbs, e.g. is, are, has, isn't
	little English.	Use of simple conjunctions, e.g. and, but
Description	He has straight, short, black hair. His eyes are small and brown. His face is oval and he isn't short but isn't tall.	Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. Ji, Sydney, hair, eyes
		Use of present tense, e.g. lives, speaks, has
		Use of detailed noun groups, e.g. straight, short, black hair

20 (d)

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft
- Employ upper and lower case appropriately
- Use correct spacing between words/lines/paragraphs
- Set out work using appropriate layout, e.g. margins, date, headings, sub headings, dot points, columns etc.
- Use appropriate pen colour
- Write in sentences using appropriate vocabulary (technical and non technical)
- Write using the text structure and language features of a simple information report

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Animals, houses, plants, countries, cultures, cities, geometrical shapes, science apparatus, famous people, local environment, nutrition

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Write an information report on a familiar topic use prompts such as fact cards, visuals, recorded texts or fact sheets,
- Write an information report using reference material. Focus on the order of information as well as the other language features (including vocabulary, spelling, and standard grammar.)

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Build field knowledge using visual stimuli
- Model a range of simple information reports
- Deconstruct a simple information report
- Construct a simple information report using visual support
- Construct a semantic map of topic words.

Joint/guided construction

- Complete a matrix (habitat, appearance etc) and compare to another reptile, based on another simple text.
- Identify and label the parts of a given text
- Match beginnings and endings of sentences, or complete the end or beginning of a sentence.
- Reconstruct a jumbled text (e.g.write in the missing information, from one word prompts; write the sentences in order)
- Pose questions for others to answer and use answers to produce a report

Independent construction

- Write sentences about a picture
- Complete cloze exercises on relevant grammar items
- Fill in a 3 x 4 information grid

About turtles

3 technical words	3 questions	3 most interesting facts	3 words I already knew

• Write an information report using scaffold, e.g. Complete sentences or use the matrix or information grid.

Stage 1

WRITING 21. can write a simple information report

Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Bosnia, Europe
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, on etc., e.g. in the sun, on their backs
Articles:	-
Definite	the, e.g. the water
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a country
Pronouns:	
Subject	it etc., e.g. It is in the Northern Hemisphere
Possessives	its, their etc., e.g. their eggs, their backs
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. This is a reptile.
Conjunctions:	
of contrast	e.g. but
of addition	e.g. and, They live in streams but they leave the water to lay
	their eggs.
Verbs:	
Present tense	to be and to have (linking verbs), e.g. Turtles are reptiles. They have
	hard shells.
Simple present of other	•
	e.g. They live in rainforest rivers.
Negation:	e.g. It doesn't lay eggs in the water.
Question formation:	
'wh'	what, where, when, who, how many etc., e.g. what does it look like?
	How many legs does it have?
Subject reversal	e.g. ls it a mammal?
'do' support	
with no auxiliary	e.g. Does it have fur?
Adjectives:	e.g. hard, small, four, webbed
Punctuation:	e.g. full stops, commas, upper/lower case, question marks,
Churche south th	paragraphs
Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, he's, she's etc., e.g. What's Bosnia's population?

Stage 1

Note. This more complex text can be written as a scaffold (see Writing - 19/a) with gaps left for sentence beginnings or key phrases and the rest of the text modelled by the teacher.

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Text Structure - Description

General statement - identifies and classifies subject

Description - including appearance, habitat, food, reproduction

TURTLES

Turtles are members of the reptile family of animals. There are more than 200 different types of turtles. Terrestrial turtles, which live on land, are sometimes called tortoises.

Turtles have hard shells on their backs. The upper section of the shell is called the carapace. It is joined at the sides to the plastron, or the lower section. Turtles have small eyes, little noses, four legs and short webbed feet.

These animals do not have teeth. Turtles eat things such as plants, fish, frogs and insects.

Marine turtles live in rainforest rivers and streams but they leave the water to bask in the sun and lay their eggs. The females lay their eggs on land, in holes in the ground. When the baby turtles hatch, they crawl down to the water.

Language Features

Text organised from most general classification to more specific details.

Use of general nouns, e.g. turtles Technical nouns e.g. plastron, carapace

Use of timeless present, typical of much scientific writing, e.g. are, have, live

Use of linking verbs, e.g. are, have

Use of action verbs to build information, e.g. live, eat, bask

Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. hard, small, short, webbed

Sentences and statements used throughout the text.



Text Structure - Factual description

General statement - identifies and classifies the subject

Description - includes location, size, climate and population

BOSNIA

Bosnia is a country in Europe.

It is in the Northern Hemisphere, east of Greenwich and is between $10^{\circ}E$ and $20^{\circ}E$ longitude.

The area is about 51,000 square kilometres. The nearest ocean is the Atlantic Ocean. The capital city is Sarajevo.

Bosnia has cold winters and hot summers.

Approximately four and a half million people live in Bosnia.

Language Features

Use of timeless present, typical of much scientific writing, e.g. is, live, has

Use of general nouns, e.g. country

Use of linking verbs, e.g. is, has

Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. northern, nearest, capital, cold, hot

Sentences and statements used throughout

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Stage 2

Orientation to Learning



Suggested Teaching Components

- Know class teacher's and classmates' names
- Read school information, locate rooms
- Know basic rules and routines, e.g. dress codes or uniform, punctuality, attendance, absentee notes (Make models of these available in first language/s)
- Come prepared to class, e.g. bring equipment, diary, completed home-work, sports clothes
- Exhibit appropriate classroom behaviour, e.g. work cooperatively in pairs or groups, wait for others to finish speaking, follow teacher instructions (pro-social skills)
- Organise work book or folder and complete set classwork at home
- Ask for help (inside and outside classroom)
- Use a dictionary (English and bi-lingual dictionaries)
- Choose appropriate texts for research at independent learning level
- Access information from books, e.g. contents page, title page, index, spine
- Use strategies to aid learning, e.g. note taking, summarising, using teacher feedback, new vocabulary notebook (See Learning Strategies in Refugee Handbook)
- Access information from the school library and from other sources, e.g. local library, DVDs, Internet, other resources

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

School environment, road safety, personal safety, all curriculum areas

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Set out and regularly reinforce procedures, e.g. timetable, rules, equipment, folders, presentation
- Allocate time to access library resources
- Raise awareness of culturally appropriate behaviour, e.g. cross cultural cooperation and teach pro-social skills e.g give students oral models of comments, how to interrupt or ask for clarification, questions etc to practise with a partner)
- Introduce strategies to aid learning, e.g. vocabulary notebook, homework diary, highlighting key words, note taking, computer skills

Joint/guided construction

- Develop class rules
- Extend skills in library resources, research, e.g. encyclopaedia, DVDs, non fiction, Internet
- Provide opportunities to discuss problems, e.g. bullying, racism, sexual harassment
- Develop strategies/skills to seek assistance

Independent construction

- Assist new students with school procedures
- Develop own study routines and practices
- Maintain and organise own equipment, book work, homework
- Join local library

There are several suggestions and resources for assisting students (both refugee and migrant) in "learning to learn" in Section 3, *Refugee Handbook for Schools.* This handbook is also on-line on the Ministry of Education ESOL page.

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Use checklists based on teaching components
- Record observations (e.g. of a structured peer interaction in pro-social skills)
- Respond to student/ teacher feedback
- Cloze on class rules

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Stage 2 Oral Interaction

6

- Ask for directions, e.g. How do I get to the bus stop?
- Ask for information, e.g. How do I join the library?, How do I use the photocopier?
- Ask for goods and services, e.g. making an appointment
- Ask for repetition, clarification, explanation and elaboration
- Give personal information
- Use appropriate expressions for opening/closing
- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Develop self correction techniques through paying attention to articulation, intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features at word, phrase and clause level
- Use appropriate polite expressions

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Local community, social interactions, e.g. joining a club or team, teacher/ student interaction, asking to be a monitor

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Ask for and provide personal information in an interview or introduce a friend to the class.
- Make an appointment
- Ask for or give directions

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model relevant situations focussing on text structure, vocabulary and body language
- Demonstrate appropriate language features, e.g. opening and closing, questioning, modality, clarification, tenor and imperatives
- Provide a variety of spoken texts focussing on intonation and stress, e.g. recorded texts and videos
- Model culturally appropriate language (as in pro-social skills training)

Joint/guided construction

- Brainstorm relevant vocabulary and situations using the Think, Pair, Share process (Think, by yourself, Pair up with a partner and discuss your ideas, Share these with another pair.)
- Predict language using video and no sound
- Sequence using visual stimulus with students providing an oral response

Independent construction

- Role play with the assistance of task cards
- Play games, e.g. treasure hunt to elicit personal information, barrier game to ask and respond to directions
- Ask and answer questions, e.g. in mock interviews

ORAL INTERACTION

2. can negotiate an oral transaction

Grammar Scope

Nouns:		Question formation:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Ms Rogers	'wh'	e.g. Where is Ms. Rogers?
Common nouns	e.g. sport, staffroom	subject reversal	e.g. Can't I do soccer with my friends?
Prepositions:		'do' support when	
Of place	across, in, on, between etc., e.g. in the staffroom	no auxiliary	e.g. I don't like volleyball.
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with my friends	Negation:	e.g. I didn't choose volleyball.
Articles:		Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, I have. No, I haven't. Yes, you can. No, you can't.
Definite	the, e.g. the staffroom	Present tense verbs:	e.g. She's in the staffroom.
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. an appointment	Past tense verbs:	e.g. l was away.
Omission of article before		Future tense verbs:	e.g. I'll stay in volleyball.
most proper nouns,		Imperative verbs:	e.g. You need to go and see Ms Rogers.
with uncountable nouns	e.g. on Tuesday, You can only do powerwalking.	Modals:	could, might, may, would etc., e.g. You can only do
Pronouns:			powerwalking
Subject	I, you, we etc., e.g. I don't like volleyball	Simple contractions:	what's, I'm, it's, she's etc., e.g. I didn't choose volleyball
Possessive	your, her, my etc., e.g. my friends		
Conjunctions:			
Additive	and etc., e.g. You need to go and see Ms Rogers.		
Causal	because, so etc., e.g. Because I was away, I didn't choose volleyball.		
Adjectives:	different, full, late etc., e.g. Most sports are full.		
Adverbs:			
Of place	away, here, there etc., e.g. I was away.		
Of focus	only, even etc., e.g. You can only do powerwalking.		

Text Structure -Negotiating change **Opening/Initiation** Student: I don't like volleyball. I want to change my sport. Response Teacher: It's a little bit late! Initiation Student: But, I didn't choose volleyball. I was away. Response Teacher: Well that's a bit different. You need to go and see Ms Rogers. **Response/Initiation** Student: OK. Where is Ms Rogers? Inform: Teacher: She's in the staffroom. Closure Student: Thank you.

STAFFROOM (STUDENT KNOCKS) Opening Teacher: Come in. **Polite Opening/Initiation** Student: Excuse me Ms Rogers, I want to change my sport please. Response Teacher: It's a little bit late! Inform Student: My teacher said I could. Clarify/Initiate Teacher: Did he now? Why? Response Student: Because I was away and I didn't choose volleyball. Inform Teacher: Most sports are full... You can only do powerwalking or softball. Initiation Student: But I want to do soccer with my friends. Please? Response

Teacher: Maybe next term.

Language Features

Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. Ms Rogers, volleyball

Use of simple sentences shortened where appropriate, e.g. Maybe next term.

Use of appropriate structures and intonation for asking/answering 'wh' and polar questions

Vocabulary appropriate to exchange

Use of appropriate language for closures, e.g. Thanks Ms. Thank you.

Use of polite language, e.g. Excuse me. Thank you.

ORAL INTERACTION

3 (a)

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Listen to a recount
- Ask and answer questions about a recount
- Follow the text structure and language features of a recount
- Give a recount in correct sequence
- Develop self correction techniques through paying attention to articulation, intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features at word, phrase and clause level

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Personal experience, e.g. migration, field trips, literature themes, historical characters and events, journal, celebrations, holidays, environment

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Give a short recount on a familiar topic
- Respond to recount, e.g. answer multiple choice, true/false questions
- Retell what someone else has just said.

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Build field knowledge with the use of pictures, videos, diagrams, word banks etc.
- Introduce recounts through the use of visuals, videos, recorded texts, etc.
- Use picture supported recount to analyse the text structure and language features
- Develop a question chart to encourage students to express feelings and attitudes in an oral recount

Joint/guided construction

- Complete dictagloss to encourage student interaction by retelling of events
- Use flashcard prompts to assist students presenting independent recounts with key structural words, e.g. Who? Where? When?
- Use text timelines, e.g. 'My Life'
- Label pictures with appropriate language features, e.g. first, next, finally

Independent construction

- Give anecdotal recount
- Retell recount using photo/picture
- Play games, e.g. board game (with events/themes on board), barrier games
- Listen to a recount and sequence pictures

Stage 2

	Grammar	Scope
--	---------	-------

Grammar Scope			
Nouns:		Adverbs:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Friday, Centennial Park, USA	Of manner	quickly, carefully, strongly etc., e.g. He campaigned strongly.
Common nouns	e.g. teachers, roll, son, navy	Quantifiers:	very, some etc., e.g. Some students played cricket.
Prepositions:		Question formation:	
Of place	in, on etc., e.g. in Dallas,	'wh'	e.g. Where did you go? What did you do there?
Of time and date	in, at, after, before, on etc., e.g. at two o'clock, in 1940	Subject reversal	e.g. Was it on Friday? Were your friends there?
Of purpose	for, etc., e.g. for a walk, for a picnic, for civil rights	'do' support when	
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with the teacher	no auxiliary	e.g. Did you go by train? Did you have a good day?
Articles:		Short answer forms	e.g. Yes, I did. No, I didn't. Yes, she was. No, she wasn't.
Definite	the, e.g. the teacher	Verbs:	
Indefinite	a, an, e.g. a picnic	Past tense action verbs	e.g. Our school went to Centennial Park. We sat together.
Omission of article		Past continuous tense	
before most proper nouns,		action verbs	e.g. Everyone was chatting and eating.
with uncountable nouns	e.g. last Friday, He attended Harvard.	Passive voice (action verbs)	e.g. JFK was elected president. He is also remembered.
Pronouns:			
Subject	l, you, we etc., e.g. We arrived at the park.		
Possessive	our, his, her, my etc., e.g. our school, his work in foreign affairs		
Conjunctions:			
Temporal	when, then, firstly etc., e.g. when we arrived, Firstly our teachers marked the roll.		
Contrastive	but etc., e.g. but others went for a walk		
Additive	and, also etc., e.g. chatting and eating		
Adjectives:	two, good, bad, great etc., e.g. a great day, They had two children.		

Text S	tructure	- R	ecount
--------	----------	-----	--------

Orientation - introduces a setting and main characters/participants involved in events

Record of events

Reorientation/evaluation

CLASS PICNIC

Last Friday our class went to Centennial Park for a picnic. Our teacher made us take hats and sunblock so we didn't get sunburnt.

Firstly our teacher marked the roll and then we got on the bus. On the bus everyone was chatting and eating. When we arrived at the park some students played cricket, some played cards but others went for a walk with the teacher.

At lunch time we sat together and had our picnic. Some of us got stung by ants and a wasp climbed into my drink.

Finally at two o'clock we left for school. We had a fantastic day, but we were all exhausted.

Language Features

Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. Centennial Park, school, picnic

Use of adverbial phrases to say when and where events took place, e.g. last Friday, at lunchtime, to Centennial Park

Use of conjunctions to sequence events in time, e.g. when, firstly, finally

Use of action verbs, e.g. played, went, marked

Use of past tense, e.g. left, sat

Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. fantastic

Text Structure - Factual (historical) recount	JOHN F KENNEDY (JFK)	Language Features
Includes a setting and main	John Fitzgerald Kennedy was born in 1917 in Brookline, Massachusetts, USA. He was the son of Joseph P Kennedy and the brother of Robert and Edward. During World War II he served in	Use of word families to build information, e.g. House of Representatives, Democrat, Senate, president
characters involved in events	the navy. He attended Harvard University and graduated in 1940. In 1953 he married Jacqueline Bouvier	Use of action verbs, e.g. served, graduated, entered
Record of events	and they later had two children. In 1946 he was elected to the House of Representatives as a Democrat and in 1953 he entered	Use of past tense as in examples above Use of adverbial phrases of time to say when events took
	the Senate.	place, e.g. in 1917, in 1940
Statement of significance	JFK was elected president of the USA in 1960 when he was 43. He was the first Roman Catholic president and the second youngest president in history. He campaigned strongly for	Use of conjunctions, e.g. and
	civil rights, education and equal rights for black Americans. He is also remembered for his work in foreign affairs, such as the Cuban Missile Crisis 1962.	Use of passive voice, e.g. was born, was elected Use of noun groups to build up descriptions, e.g. the
Reorientation	JFK was assassinated in Dallas, Texas in 1963.	second youngest president
		Use of John F Kennedy, JFK or 'he' as the beginning focus of many clauses (grammatical theme)
ORAL INTERACTION

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Listen to a description
- Ask and answer questions about a description
- Follow the text structure and language features of a description
- Give a description in a wide range of contexts, e.g. person, scene, object, artwork
- Develop self correction techniques through paying attention to articulation, intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features at word, phrase and clause level

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiencest

Any curriculum topic: animals, people, places, literature themes, field trips, buildings, transport, school, important events, shapes, clothing, art/craft, environment, landforms

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Give oral presentation
- Listen and number facts in order or match key points to visuals
- Oral/aural comprehension activities

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use a range of aural/visual stimuli to elicit and expand vocabulary
- Provide a range of modelled descriptions and identify purpose
- Provide explicit explanation of text structure and language features
- Classify language features according to topic, e.g. characters, settings, objects, feelings

Joint/guided construction

- Brainstorm a familiar subject in terms of its attributes
- Use activities to build up descriptive language especially adjectives and adjectival phrases, e.g. brainstorming, antonym and synonym grids
- Deconstruct a text by marking information on a grid of key descriptive elements
- Play guessing games, e.g. 'Twenty Questions', blindfolded taste test, 'Mystery Sound', riddles, 'Celebrity Heads'

- Describe a picture of a subject, e.g. a house
- Play games, e.g. barrier and compare descriptive detail using similar pictures
- Describe a family member, famous person, literary character, place or thing etc.
- Respond to comprehension questions focussing on descriptive detail

Stage 2

Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Southern Cross, Aoraki, New Zealand
Common nouns	e.g. flags, stars, equipment
Prepositions:	eigi nago, staio, equipment
Of place	near, in, on etc., e.g. on the blue background, in the
I	Aoraki - Mt Cook National Park
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the New Zealand flag
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. an independent country
Omission of article befor	
most proper nouns	e.g., One of these is Aoraki.
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we, it etc., e.g. It is 3754 metres high.
Conjunctions and connect	
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. the New Zealand Prime Minister and the government
Adjectives:	red, six, left, middle etc., e.g. It has four red and white stars on the blue background.
Adverbs:	the blue background.
Of time	then, tomorrow, yesterday once etc., e.g. New Zealand was
or time	once a colony
Of degree	about, approximately, almost, very etc., e.g. people need to be
5	very careful.
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those etc., e.g. One of these is Aoraki.
Empty subject (there/it) +	
	e.g. There are many interesting things in the South Island.
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. What colour is it? Why does it have five points?
Subject reversal 'do' support when	e.g. Are the stars white? Is the background blue?
no auxiliary	e.g. Does it have stars on it?
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it is. No, it isn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't.
Present tense verbs:	e.g. One of these is Aoraki. Its Māori name means 'cloud piercer'.
	Each year several people die on Aoraki.

English Language Intensive Programme

Stage 2

ORAL INTERACTION

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Text Structure - Description

Introduction

Description - includes physical characteristics

THE NEW ZEALAND FLAG

The New Zealand flag has three colours, red, white and blue. It has four red and white stars on the blue background.

The four stars represent the Southern Cross. The Southern Cross is a group of stars in the sky above New Zealand. Each star has five points.

The British flag, which has red and white crosses on a dark blue background, is in the top left corner, because New Zealand was once a colony owned by Britain. Now it is an independent country which is a member of the British Commonwealth of Nations. The queen of England is still the head of state, but the New Zealand Prime Minister and the government are in charge of the country.

Language Features

Use of nouns that refer to a particular thing i.e. not general, e.g. The New Zealand flag

Use of describing adjectives, e.g. blue

Use of pronouns to track the subject (referencing), e.g. it

Use of detailed noun groups to build up the description, e.g. red and white crosses, in the top left-hand corner

Use of relating verbs, e.g. are, represent

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. on the blue background



Text Structure - Description

Introduction

Description - includes physical characteristics

Background information

AORAKI (MT COOK)

There are many interesting things in the South Island of New Zealand. One of these is Aoraki (Mt Cook). Aoraki is the highest mountain in New Zealand. Its Māori name means "cloud piercer".

This mountain is 3754 metres high. It is part of the range of mountains called the Southern Alps. The mountain is in the Aoraki- Mt Cook National Park. The National Park has hundreds of unique native plants and about 40 types of native birds.

Many people visit Aoraki each year to climb the mountain. Aoraki is a very steep and dangerous mountain and people who want to climb it need to be very careful and take the right equipment, especially in winter. Each year several people die on Aoraki.

Language Features

Use of nouns that refer to a particular thing, not general, e.g. Aoraki

Use of describing adjectives, e.g. largest, nine, interesting

Use of pronouns to track the subject, (referencing) e.g. It is 3754 metres high.

Use of detailed noun groups to build up the description, e.g. a very steep and dangerous mountain

Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, are

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. in the world, on Aoraki, in winter

ORAL INTERACTION

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use of appropriate vocabulary
- Listen to an information report
- Ask and answer questions about an information report
- Follow the text structure and language features of an information report
- Give an information report
- Develop self correction techniques through paying attention to articulation, intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features at word, phrase and clause level.

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Endangered animals, Solar System, plants, countries, cities, food, nutrition, health, drugs, computers, transport, rainforests, deserts, celebrations, art, famous people, money systems, education, exploration, settlement, landmarks

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Respond to an oral text by completing comprehension activities, e.g. true/ false/not enough evidence activities, multiple choice activities, picture matching activities, grid completion.
- Research a topic with the aid of a scaffold and present the information as a report to a small group/class

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Describe the purpose of an information report, build field knowledge and explain appropriate technical language
- Identify and model the text structure and language features
- Classify information into a structured overview using pictures, labels, headings, subheadings. Make up main ideas and details strips and students sort into categories.
- Develop and provide a checklist of criteria related to an oral presentation, e.g. use of visuals, appropriate text structure and pronunciation techniques

Joint/guided construction

- Brainstorm to develop word banks and field knowledge (Think, pair, share)
- Compare and contrast the features of a good report and a bad report
- Compile lists under headings: 'What we know' and 'What we want to find out', using a subject or picture
- Respond to texts by completing a matrix, answering comprehension questions, cloze, Dictagloss
- Have pictures of two similar animals of the same species and in pairs describe (without the partner seeing the picture) what is the same or different about them (barrier activity)

- Research a topic with the aid of a scaffold and present to the whole class
- Play games, e.g. 'Twenty Questions', match words to definitions/pictures, 'What am I', barrier
- Identify main points of an information report
- Demonstrate understanding of technical terms through, e.g. 'Concentration', oral cloze, true/false, picture sequencing

Stage 2

Grammar Scope

Nouns:				
Proper nouns	e.g. Australian			
Common nouns	e.g. kiwi, wings, sharks			
Prepositions:				
Of place	around, in, on etc., e.g. in burrows, around the world			
Of purpose	for etc., e.g. for food			
Articles:				
Definite	the, e.g. the female			
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a burrow			
Omission of article before				
most proper nouns, and				
with uncountable nouns	e.g.of New Zealand			
Pronouns:				
Subject	it, they etc., e.g. They grow.			
Object	it, them, him, her, us etc., e.g. They eat it in big pieces.			
Possessive	out, her, my, these those their etc., e.g. Their skeletons are made			
	from cartilage.			
Demonstrative	e.g. used these for cloaks			
Conjunctions and connective				
Contrastive	but, although etc., e.g. Other fish have bones but sharks don't.			
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. worms, insects and berries			
Causal	because, so etc., e.g. so they can move easily in the water			
Adjectives:	e.g., greyish-brown, large, big, the bird family (bird is working as an adjective here)			
Adverbs:				
Of frequency	usually, always, sometimes, never etc., e.g. but they don't usually attack people.			
Of manner	easily, quickly, carefully etc., e.g. They move easily in the water.			
Of degree	about, approximately, nearly etc., e.g. about a metre			
Quantifiers:	most, very, some etc., e.g.			

Question formation:

'wh'
Subject reversal
Modal 'can'
'do' support when
no auxiliary
Negation:
Short answer forms:
Infinitive verbs:
Modals:
Simple contractions:

e.g. Are sharks fish?
e.g. Can sharks move easily?
e.g. Do kiwi eat meat?
e.g. Sharks don't chew most food.
e.g. Yes, they do. No, they don't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is. No, it isn't.
e.g. They come out to feed at night..
e.g. They may eat fish.
don't, what's, isn't etc., e.g. Sharks don't chew most food.

e.g. Where do they live? What do they eat?

Stage 2

ORAL INTERACTION

5. can listen, respond to and give an information report

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Text Structure -	Information	Report	
------------------	-------------	--------	--

Title

General statement - identifies and classifies

Description - includes appearance, behaviour habitat, habits, breeding and interaction with humans

Background Information

KIWI

Kiwi are small New Zealand native birds. They belong to the bird family.

Kiwi are usually grayish-brown in colour, but some kiwi are spotted. They grow to about the size of a chicken and. have very long beaks for digging in the forest floor.

They are flightless birds, which means that they cannot use their wings.

Kiwi live in the forest areas of New Zealand. They are nocturnal birds which sleep during the day and come out to feed at night.

They eat worms, insects and berries.

The female kiwi lays its large white eggs in a burrow and the male looks after the eggs and keeps them warm for about 80 days until they hatch.

The Māori people valued the feathers of the kiwi and used these for making cloaks. Kiwi are now in danger from dogs, stoats, possums and other harmful pests.

Language Features

Use of general nouns, e.g. kiwi

Use of timeless present - typical of much scientific writing, e.g. are, eat, lays, live

Use of past tense verbs to show that something happened in the past.e.g The Māori people valued the feathers.

Use of relating verbs, e.g. are, have

Use of adverbial phrases to locate, e.g. in a burrow

Use of technical language, e.g. nocturnal

Use of nouns to build topic information, e.g. insects, berries, burrow

Use of pronouns to stand for nouns to help cohesion in text e.g. used these (the feathers) for cloaks

Use of adverbial phrases to build description, e.g. for digging

Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. flightless

Note the suffix - less showing that something is not there - in this case the ability to fly; the suffix - ful (harmful) showing that something has or is full of something (in this case the animal pests are full of harm - or danger to kiwi)

Use of action verbs to build information, e.g. lays, looks after

Use of sentences and statements throughout



SHARKS

Text Structure - Information report

General statement - Identifies and classifies

Description - includes habitat, appearance, feeding habits etc.

Sharks are fish. They belong to the group called Elasmobranchii.

Sharks live in waters all around the world. They live in every ocean and in some rivers and lakes.

Other fish have bones but sharks don't. Their skeletons are made from cartilage which is not as hard as bone.

Sharks can range in size from 18cm to 15m but most sharks are in the middle, around 1.5m - 2.1m in length. Most sharks have bodies shaped like cigars so they can move easily in the water.

Sharks have about 5 rows of teeth. The front teeth are the biggest. Sharks don't chew most food. They eat it in big pieces. Many people are afraid of sharks because of their big teeth but they don't usually attack people.

All sharks are carnivores (meat eaters) and they may eat fish, squid, other sharks, marine mammals and other small animals.

Language Features Use of sentences and statements throughout

Use of general nouns, e.g. sharks

Use of timeless present tense – typical of much scientific writing, e.g. are, belong, live

Use of relating verbs, e.g. are, have

Use of adverbial phrases to locate, e.g. in the middle, in some rivers and lakes

Use of technical language, e.g. elasmobranchii, carnivores

Use of nouns to build topic information, e.g. skeleton, bones

Use of adverbial phrases to build description, e.g. from cartilage

Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. hard, biggest, big

Use of action verbs to build information, e.g. move, eat

ORAL INTERACTION

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Listen to a procedure
- Ask and answer questions about a procedure
- Follow the text structure of a procedure
- Outline a procedure
- Develop self correction techniques through paying attention to articulation, information, stress, rhythm, phonological features at word, phrase and clause level

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Recipes, class instructions, scientific experiments, computers, craft, games, everyday procedures, resuscitation, solid shapes, flow charts, models, geometry, fire drill, first aid

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Students complete a task from oral instructions
- Sequence a procedure using language features, e.g. time connectives
- Give spoken instructions

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use sequenced pictures, videos and demonstrations to elicit vocabulary and build field knowledge
- Provide a range of simple guided procedures and identify purpose
- Introduce and model the text structure and language features
- Demonstrate the use of action verbs and adverbial phrases with the use of visual stimuli

Joint/guided construction

- Introduce materials/equipment needed to complete a procedure through picture bingo, 'Concentration', 'What is missing?' etc.
- Brainstorm purpose and audience of particular procedures
- Respond physically to directions/instructions, e.g. origami, 'Cat's Cradle'
- Listen to an unfamiliar procedure and identify type through collocation/association, e.g. measure, cut, boil cooking

- Sequence steps by numbering pictures while listening to a simple procedure
- Retell a procedure and others follow instructions
- Role play a familiar procedure
- Play games focussing on key words, e.g. 'Simon Says', 'Blind Man's Walk'

Stage 2

Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Casio 82TL
Common nouns	e.g. beakers, water, marker pen, calculator
Prepositions:	eig. Seakers, water, marker pen, calculator
Of place	in, on etc., e.g. on the outside, in a warm place
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with water, with algebraic logic
Of duration	for, since etc., e.g. for a few days
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the beakers, the number
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a foil cover
Conjunctions:	
Contrastive	or, but, although etc., e.g. or similar calculator
Adjectives:	e.g. both, warm, few, similar
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. What do you do first? When do you add the water?
Subject reversal	e.g. Is the water level the same?
'do' support when no auxiliary	e.g. Does the water level change?
Modal 'can'	e.g. Can you see a difference?
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it does. No, it doesn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't.
	Yes, it is. No, it isn't.
Imperative verbs:	e.g. fill, put, leave, press, type, read
Infinitive verbs:	e.g. To find out about evaporation. How to use a calculator
	to find the square root of a number.

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1

Text Structure - Procedure

Note: This is not the text structure for a science experiment report. This is only the part known as method.

Goal or aim

Materials and/or equipment

Steps to accomplish goal

EVAPORATION

Aim: To find out about evaporation.

Equipment: 50ml water beakers, some aluminium foil, marker pen,

Method:

- 1. Fill two beakers with the same amount of water.
- 2. Mark the water level on the outside of each beaker.
- 3. Put a foil cover over one of the beakers.
- 4. Leave both beakers in a warm place for a few days.
- 5. Measure the water level in both beakers.
- 6. Write down the results.

Language Features Use of nouns and noun groups, e.g. beakers, marker pen

Use of commands, e.g. fill, mark

Use of action verbs, e.g. write down, measure

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. in a warm place, with the same amount

Use of technical language to build up the field, e.g. evaporation, beakers

Use of numbers to indicate order of events

Text Structure - Procedure

Goal or aim

Materials and/or equipment

Steps to accomplish goal

HOW TO USE A CALACULATOR TO FIND THE SQUARE ROOT OF A NUMBER.

Casio 82TL (or similar calculator with algebraic logic)

Method:

Press the ON key.
 Press the √ (key) .
 Type the number.
 Press the = (key).
 Read the answer (to the required number of places).

Language Features Use of nouns, e.g. calculator, square root

Use of commands, e.g. press, type, read

Use of action verbs, e.g. type, press, read

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. to the required number of places

Use of technical language to build up the field, e.g. square root, logic

Use of numbers to indicate order of events

ORAL INTERACTION

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Listen to a narrative, e.g. narrative poems and ballads, short stories, legends, myths, graded readers, factual narratives (note the difference between a narrative and a recount is the existence of a problem and resolution in a narrative)
- Ask and answer questions about a narrative
- Identify key elements of a narrative, e.g. plot.events characters, setting
- Follow the text structure of a narrative
- Retell the narrative in different registers and modes
- Develop self correction techniques through paying attention to articulation, intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features at word, phrase and clause level

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Literature themes, drama, films, legends and folktales of all cultures

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Use a visual stimulus to retell the story
- Complete simple comprehension exercises
- Remember to use the teaching and learning tasks for assessment tasks as well.

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use visual stimuli and sound effects to elicit vocabulary and build mood/field knowledge
- Introduce the purpose and text structure through a range of simple narratives, e.g. short stories, folk tales, legends, readers
- Analyse structure and language features
- Familiarise students with speech and presentation conventions, e.g. pausing, varying pace, stress, facial expressions, gestures
- Change the mode or register of the narrative (translate to visual text eg story board, make up a song) For Writing component of this programme, rewrite in a different text form which has been modelled e.g. as a news report)
- Play retell games, e.g. the 'Hot Seat Game', 'Story, Story Die', 'Advance/Extend', (See Strategies Glossary)

Joint/guided construction

- Develop a semantic web based on words that differ by shades of meaning from a given word, e.g. said, grumbled, whispered, screamed
- Complete a Dictagloss or complete an oral cloze
- Respond to characters and events in a story by miming facial expressions, gestures and body movement

- Sequence pictures and retell in small groups
- Role play or dramatise a familiar narrative
- Change the resolution of the narrative and present to class in groups

Initial complication

Record of events

Complication - includes record of events

Title

soaring like eagles.

was gone forever.

him, but there was no answer.

Language Features Text Structure - Narrative THE LEGEND OF DAEDALUS AND ICARUS Identification of main characters by name e.g Minos, Daedalus Orientation - introduces main characters A long time ago, on the island of Crete, there lived a cruel king called Minos. He had many prisoners on the island. Among these prisoners were an inventor Use of word families to build information, e.g. birds, fly, wings, called Daedalus, and his son Icarus. feathers Minos kept the harbours in the sea under guard so nobody could escape. Use of action verbs, e.g. gathered, obeyed "Very well," Daedalus told Icarus, "we'll try the sky." He meant that they would fly away from the island, like birds. Use of imperatives, for giving rules." Stay close", "Don't fly too close." Daedalus gathered all the feathers he could find, then he stuck them together Use of various tenses including present, past, future, e.g. here are, with wax to make two pairs of wings. "Now you can fly," he whispered to were, obeyed, will melt, (but mainly past describing events that Icarus. "Listen to me carefully. Here are the rules for flying to keep us safe. happened in the past.) Stay close behind me. Don't fly too high because the sun will melt the wax. Don't fly too low, as the water will make the feathers wet and heavy." Late Use of direct speech, e.g. "Now you can fly," he whispered to Icarus. that evening, when the sun had set, they took off from the edge of a cliff,

They flew quietly through the dark night and after a few hours the sun rose.

At first, Icarus obeyed the rules, but then he forgot, because he was having too much fun. He flew closer and closer to the hot sun. Daedalus called out to

Daedalus turned back to look for his son, with fear in his heart. He saw

nothing but a few feathers floating on the sea. When he realised that his son

had drowned, he let out a cry of grief and tears rolled from his eyes. His son

The island near where legend says that Icarus fell into the sea is called Icaria.

Use of saying verbs, e.g. told, whispered

Use of thinking verbs, e.g. realised, meant

Use of connectives of time to sequence events, e.g. at first, when

Use of connectives of cause and effect to show connections between events e.g. because, as

Use of complex sentences, e.g. When realised that his son had drowned he let out a cry of grief and tears rolled from his eyes.

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1

Resolution

7 (c)

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2

Text Structure - Factual Narrative Title Orientation - introduces main character	SHARK It was a warm day in March. I was very excited. The day had finally come. I was in the Dragon Boat team for the National Championships.	Language Features Use of word families to build information, e.g. National Championships, boat, paddle, race Use of action verbs, e.g. exercised, went off, moved, drove
Initial complication and record of events	I got up very early and exercised as always. Then after breakfast my dad drove me to Oriental Bay. My team arrived and it was time to start. Ready, set and the starting gun went off. We began in third position and were slowly moving closer. There they were. We could see the second boat and then we did it. We moved past. My arms were aching. My whole body was sore but we all rowed harder.	Use of various tenses including present, past and infinitive (simple, continuous and perfect forms), e.g. must be seeing, was, looked, were moving, to start Use of direct speech, e.g. "Shark! Shark!" Use of saying verbs, e.g. shouted
Complication - includes Evaluation	The first boat was just in front when I saw a dark shadow near the boat. I looked again. What was it? I was sure it was the shape of a cigar. "Oh no," I thought," I must be seeing things. A shark in Oriental Bay? Impossible!"	Use of thinking verbs, e.g. thought Use of time conjunctions, e.g. then, when Use of compound sentences, e.g. We began in third position and
Resolution	Just then I felt a hard tug and I pulled my paddle out of the water. "Why only half a paddle?" I thought. Then I knew. I shouted to my team. "Shark! Shark!" and suddenly we forgot the race. We paddled faster than ever back to shore. We made it. At last, we were safe!	Use of adjectives, e.g. excited, closer, faster Use of adverbs, e.g. slowly, always, harder Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. near the boat, in front

Suggested Teaching Components

- Use appropriate vocabulary (for general and specific, technical words)
- Listen to an explanation
- Ask and answer questions about an explanation
- Follow the text structure and language features of an explanation with visual cues
- Retell events in an explanation in correct sequence
- Develop self correction techniques through paying attention to articulation, intonation, stress, rhythm, phonological features at word, phrase and clause level

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Any curriculum area – e.g. life cycles, food chains, migration, periods in art, computers, conflict between Māori and white settlers over land, historical events, volcanoes, weather, water cycle, mathematical problems, technology

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Sequence events or pictures
- Complete simple oral comprehension exercises (grid completion)
- Explain a diagram or other visual

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use visual stimuli/brainstorm activities (Think, Pair, Share) to elicit vocabulary and build field knowledge especially of technical terms
- Introduce explanations through the use of visual stimuli and recorded texts
- Model text structure and language features using visual support
- Demonstrate words that show cause and effect

Joint/guided construction

- Compare pictures or diagrams that relate to an explanation from two different sources, e.g. 'The Life Cycle of a Frog' and 'The Life Cycle of a Butterfly' to show differences and similarities
- Develop a set of questions focussing on time connectives, e.g. What happens first? What happens next?
- Make a class chart of the explanation stages
- Predict causes of a phenomenon

- Sequence events or pictures
- Retell a simple visually supported explanation
- Reconstruct a simple explanation using visual texts, e.g. flow charts, timelines
- Match pictures and diagrams to stages
- Complete oral cloze

ORAL INTERACTION

8. can listen and respond to a simple explanation

Nouns:	
Common nouns	e.g. grasshoppers, wings, skin, tongue, muscle, saliva
Prepositions:	
Of place	to, in, on, over etc., e.g. to the stomach
Of time and date	in, on, after, before etc., e.g. in late summer, in spring
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the tongue, the stomach
Omission of article before	
most proper nouns, with	
uncountable nouns	e.g. This process is called peristalsis.
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we, they, it etc., e.g. They are adults, It moves food around the mouth.
Possessive	our, her, my, their etc., e.g. They shed their skins.
Relative	that, which etc., e.g. It contains an enzyme that starts to break down carbohydrate.
Conjunctions:	
Contrastive	but, although etc., e.g. but they have no wings
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. Male and female grasshoppers mate.
Temporal	when, first, second, finally etc., e.g. Saliva wets the food when it is
	in the mouth.
Adjectives:	e.g. male, female, adult, young, bigger, salivary
Adverbs:	
Of manner	physically, quickly, carefully etc., e.g. The teeth physically break up the food.
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. What happens after the female lays the eggs? When are grasshoppers fully grown? What is peristalsis?
Subject reversal	e.g. Is this grasshopper fully grown?
'do' support when	eig. is the groundplan tany ground
no auxiliary	e.g. Does a baby grasshopper have wings?
Modal 'can'	e.g. Can a grasshopper fly?
Negation:	e.g. Newborn grasshoppers don't have wings.
5	5 5 11 5

Short answer forms:

Verbs:

Present tense verbs Infinitive verbs Passive voice Simple contractions: e.g. Yes, it does. No, it doesn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is. No, it isn't.

e.g. hatch, grow, mate, has, break up, contains e.g. It moves food around the mouth to meet the tongue. e.g. The tongue is made of muscle. After the food is chewed don't, isn't, what's etc., e.g. Newborn grasshoppers don't have wings.



Text Structure - Explanation

Statement of phenomenon

Explanation sequence - series of events

THE LIFE CYCLE OF A GRASSHOPPER

Grasshoppers are insects. Adult male and female grasshoppers mate in late summer. After that, female grasshoppers lay eggs. Then both adults die.

The eggs hatch in spring. Newborn grasshoppers look like the adult grasshoppers but they don't have wings.

Next the young grasshoppers grow wings. They shed their skins or 'moult' five or six times as they grow bigger.

They are adults when their wings are as long as their bodies.

Language Features Use of general nouns, e.g. grasshoppers

Use of variety of action verbs to build topic information, e.g. mate, die, shed, grow

Use of classifying adjectives, e.g. male, female, baby

Use of describing adjectives, e.g. young

Use of comparative adjectives, e.g. bigger

Use of time conjunctions, e.g. when

Note: 'then' can be inserted between sentences to indicate a time sequence of events

Stage	2
-------	---

Text Structure - Explanation

Statement of phenomenon

Explanation sequence - series of events

THE BEGINNING OF DIGESTION

The adult human usually has 32 teeth, of four basic types. The teeth physically break up our food into smaller pieces.

The tongue is made of muscle. It moves food around the mouth to meet the teeth. Saliva from the salivary glands wets the food when it is in the mouth. Saliva makes the food easy to swallow. It contains salivary amylase which is an enzyme, that starts to break down any carbohydrate in the food.

After the food is chewed it is swallowed and passed through the food pipe (oesophagus) to the stomach. This process is called peristalsis.

Language Features

Use of general nouns, e.g. human tongue

Use of action verbs to build topic information, e.g. break up, moves, wets

Use of classifying adjectives, e.g. adult, salivary

Use of describing adjectives, e.g. four, easy

Use of comparative adjectives, e.g. smaller

Use of time conjunctions, e.g. after

Use of passive voice to change the focus of the grammatical theme, (the first element of the sentence) e.g. Food is chewed. The tongue is made of muscle.

Use of technical vocabulary, e.g. salivary, amylase, peristalsis

English Language Intensive Programme Primary Resource

Stage 2 Reading, Understanding and Responding

6

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop appropriate general and technical vocabulary and knowledge of prefixes and suffixes and root words used in scientific contexts
- Follow the text structure and language features of a recount
- Understand the purpose of a recount
- Understand and respond to events from a recount either orally or in writing
- Read aloud and silently a recount with particular attention to:
 - developing phonological and graphological cues including letter sound knowledge, sound blending morphemes
 - practising segmenting words into syllables
 - chunking language into meaningful chunks
 - punctuation conventions
 - stress, rhythm and intonation

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Biographies of figures related to learning in curriculum areas (maths, science, history, technology, sport, arts), personal experience, e.g. migration, field trips, historical characters and events, journal, celebrations, holidays, environment

Suggested Assessment Tasks

• Complete comprehension activities, e.g. labelling, matching, 'wh', true/false or multiple choice questions, sequencing, cloze

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Elicit and practise vocabulary using pictures, maps, timelines, Before and After Vocabulary grids, concept circles etc.,
- Discuss the difference between different types of reading reading for pleasure, reading for general understanding (gist), reading for information (main ideas and details)
- Model oral reading emphasising pronunciation, intonation, stress, rhythm etc.
- Identify text structure through a range of recounts
- Identify purpose of text, e.g. to give historical, personal, biographical information

Joint/guided construction

- Deconstruct text using timeline, 'wh' questions, jigsaw, matrix
- Reinforce structure using, e.g. cloze, sequencing, time line, comparison of recounts
- Extend vocabulary through semantic mapping, classifying, word building etc.(prefix and suffix and root word study)
- Play games, e.g. barrier games, matching

- Reconstruct texts matching pictures/texts/articles to headlines; sequencing; highlighting words/sections
- Develop questions for prediction and during and after reading, using 3 Level Thinking Guides and other structures
- Complete reference exercises (Following pronoun reference trails, other connectives, identifying substitution), vocabulary word chains

9. can read, understand and respond to a recount

Grammar Scope

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Cook, Tahiti, Great Southern Land, Rotorua
Common nouns	e.g. coast, spears, ship, trip, village
Prepositions:	
Of place	at, to, in, on etc., e.g. from England, to Tahiti about 180 kilometres away
Of time and date	in, at, after, before, on etc., e.g. in 1769, on 19 April 1770
Of purpose	for etc., e.g. for a walk,
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with their daypacks and lunch
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the Endeavour, the motorcamp
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a musket, a guide
Omission of article before	
most proper nouns,	
with uncountable nouns,	e.g. in Tahiti, on Thursday
Pronouns:	
Subject	he, l, you, we etc., e.g. at first he couldn't
Object	them, him, her, us etc., e.g. they didn't have to carry them.
Possessive	his, their, my etc., e.g. his second-in-command, their landing
Relative	which, who, where, that etc., e.g. who resisted their landing, which are small decorations.
Conjunctions: and connectiv	es
Temporal	when, then, firstly, finally etc., e.g. when he arrived
Contrastive	but, e.g. but at first he couldn't
Additive	and etc., e.g. Cook fired a musket and hit one of them.
Causal	because, so, such as etc., e.g. because they wanted to walk, so
	they anchored in a bay
Adjectives:	e.g. thermal, hot, steaming, long, difficult
Note that there are not ma	ny opinion adjectives, as this is a factual recount.
Adverbs:	
Of time	today, yesterday etc., e.g. Today this bay is called Botany Bay.
Of manner	quickly, loudly etc., e.g. The Aboriginal man shouted loudly.
Of place	here, there etc., e.g. There they were shown
Quantifiers:	many, very, some etc., e.g. some students

Question formation: 'wh'

e.g. Where did Cook go? What did Cook do there? Subject reversal e.g. Was it in 1770? Were there any native people there? 'do' support when no auxiliary e.q. Did he travel by ship? Did Cook find the Great Southern Land? e.g. He couldn't. Negation: Short answer forms: e.g. Yes, he did. No, he didn't. Yes, it was. No, it wasn't. Verbs: Past tense verbs e.g. met, decided, took, arrived, spent, walked e.g. They were shown this by a guide. Passive voice Verbal nouns (nominalised forms and gerunds): e.g. resisted their landing, after leaving Simple contractions: didn't, couldn't, isn't etc., e.g. He couldn't. Punctuation and text organisation: e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas, paragraphs

Text Structure - Historical Recount Title	CAPTAIN JAMES COOK – A NEW ARRIVAL	Language Features Use of word families to build topic information, e.g. voyage,
Orientation - provides background information	In 1769 King George III of England told Captain James Cook, an explorer, to go to Tahiti to measure the transit of Venus, one of the planets, but also to secretly look for the Great Southern Land. This was the name that the English gave to the land which they believed was on the other side of the world from England and Europe.	Use of complex clauses to relate meanings causally, (reason/result) e.g. The Aboriginal men threatened them so Cook fired a musket and hit one of them.
Record of events	After leaving Tahiti, Cook tried to find the Great Southern Land but at first he couldn't. Later, on the way back to England, he sailed west because he wanted to go to van Diemen's Land (now called Tasmania) but a gale blew his ship, Endeavour, north. His second-in-command, Lieutenant Hicks, was the first to see the Australian mainland on 19 April 1770.	Use of action verbs, e.g. fired, ran Use of thematised main participants, (i.e as the first element of the sentence because the identity of the human participants in the text are very important facts) e.g. the Aboriginal men or they, Cook or he
	 After sailing up the South Australian coast for nine days, Cook and his crew needed fresh water so they anchored in a bay. They saw two Aboriginal men who resisted their landing. The Aboriginal men shouted loudly and shook their spears. However, Cook took no notice and landed. The Aboriginal men again threatened Cook who fired a musket and hit one of them. Then the Aboriginal men ran into the bush. 	Use of technical terms, e.g. musket, anchored, transit Use of conjunctions, of addition e.g. and, but also, reason/result e.g. so, and time, e.g. after Use of noun groups to build up description, e.g. the Aboriginal men Use of connectives to sequence events, e.g. then
Reorientation	Cook then named the bay Stingray Harbour. Today this bay is called Botany Bay.	

9 (d)

Text Structure and	Language	Features:	Example 2

Text Structure - Personal Recount	A FIELD TRIP TO ROTORUA	Language Features
Orientation - provides background information	Two weeks ago some students from our school went to Rotorua for a three day field trip. We decided to go there because we wanted to see the thermal activity.	Use of word families to build topic information, e.g. mudpools, steam, Rotorua, boiling, bubbling
Record of events	At 8 o'clock on Wednesday morning we met our teachers at school. Then we travelled for three hours on the bus to Rotorua, about 180 kilometres away. It was hot on the bus and some students went to sleep.	Use of connectives to sequence events, e.g. then, after
	After arriving at Rotorua, we found the motorcamp and were taken to the bunkhouse. When we had unpacked, we went for a walk around Kuirau Park and saw the steam coming out of the ground and the mud pools boiling and bubbling. We had to stay on the paths in case we fell into the hot water.	Use of adverbial phrases of time to sequence events, e.g. at night, at 8 o'clock (often used as the first element of the sentence, as this is a recount, so the order of events is important)
	After that, we walked down to Lake Rotorua and saw Mokoia Island in the middle of the lake. Our teacher told us the legend of Hinemoa, who swam to the island at night, guided by the flute of her lover, Tūtānekai.	of place, to identify details relating to events e.g around Kuirau Park, in the middle of the lake Use of complex clauses to relate meanings
	On Thursday we went to Whakarewarewa Māori Village. There a guide showed us how the Māori people used to cook food in steaming hot pools and where the geysers of hot water	causally, e.g. They had to stay on the paths in case they fell into the hot water.
	came out of the ground. We also saw a Māori concert party who sang waiata (Māori songs) and performed a haka (war dance) and a dance with poi, which are small soft balls made of dried grasses or plastic.	Use of action verbs, e.g. went, walk, swam, erupted
	The next day we left early for the long difficult walk up Mt Tarawera, with our daypacks and lunch. When this mountain last erupted in 1886, it killed many people and destroyed villages and the Pink and White terraces, a famous tourist attraction.	Complex noun groups to build up description, e.g. the long difficult walk, the Pink and White terraces, a famous tourist attraction
Reorientation	In the evening we packed up and went back home on the bus. We were tired but felt happy after a very good time.	

English Language Intensive Programme

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop appropriate general and technical vocabulary and knowledge of word parts, especially prefixes and suffixes and root words used in scientific contexts
- Understand the text structure and language features of a description
- Understand the purpose of a description
- Understand and respond to a description either orally or in writing
- Read aloud and silently a description with particular attention to:
 - developing phonological and graphological cues including letter sound knowledge, sound blending morphemes
 - practising segmenting words into syllables
 - chunking language into meaningful chunks
 - punctuation conventions
 - stress, rhythm and intonation

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

All curriculum areas - animals, people, places, literature themes, field trips, houses, transport, school, important events, shapes, clothing, art/craft, environment, landforms, equipment, Personally relevant contexts - country of origin, own festivals, costumes, music, family

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Complete cloze (structural and content)
- Complete comprehension activities, e.g. illustrating, labelling, matching, 'wh', true/false or multiple choice questions, matrix of attributes and features

Many of the teaching and learning tasks can be used for assessment as well.

Sample Strategies

Teacher Directed

- Elicit vocabulary and build field using visuals such as diagrams, maps, photographs and Before and After Vocabulary grids, concept circles etc
- Model oral reading emphasising pronunciation, intonation, rhythm, stress etc. and discuss in what contexts you find descriptions (both by themselves and as parts of other text types)
- Demonstrate text structure and purpose in various texts to describe living things, places, scientific phenomena e.g. cyclones
- Reconstruct text

Joint/guided construction

- Brainstorm, (Think, Pair, Share) describe, list, compare/contrast vocabulary and/or concepts
- Ask and answer questions, using structures such as 3 Level Thinking Guides. Discuss different sorts of questions.
- Find, list and classify language features and relate to author's purpose
- Play games, e.g. barrier, 'Who am I'

- Complete comprehension activities, e.g. illustrating, labelling, matching, 'wh', true/false or multiple choice questions, matrix of attributes and features
- Complete cloze (structural e.g focus on pronouns, or verb phrases, or noun phrases) or content words
- Collect examples of descriptions and use as models for own text.
- Select/highlight descriptive words/phrases and identify purpose

Grammar Scope

Nouns:		Question formation:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Olympic, Athens	'wh'	e.g. What colour is it? Why is the background white?
Common nouns	e.g. flag, rings, planet, gases	Subject reversal	e.g. Is the circle yellow? Is the background blue?
Words used both as nouns		'do' support	
and adjectives	e.g. ozone is a very important gas (noun), the ozone layer (adjective)	when no auxiliary	e.g. Does it have an orange circle on it? Is there
Prepositions:			more oxygen than nitrogen?
Of place	in, on etc., e.g. in the centre, above the Earth	Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it is. No, it isn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't.
Of time and place	on, after, before etc. e.g. on 12 July	Verbs:	
Of accompaniment	including, with etc., e.g., along with the Olympic flame	Present tense verbs	e.g. Most weather is here.
Articles:		Past tense verbs	e.g. Baron Pierre de Coubertin designed the flag
Definite	the, e.g. the Olympic flag	Passive voice	e.g. The air must be pressurised.
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a powerful symbol	Simple contractions	e.g. What's, it's, isn't etc., e.g there's not enough oxygen
Omission of article before		Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops,
most proper nouns,			commas, paragraphs
with uncountable nouns	e.g. in Athens, Earth, ozone		
Pronouns:			
Subject	I, you, we, they it etc., e.g. They are the troposphere, stratosphere,		
	mesosphere and thermosphere,		
Object	him, her, us, it etc., e.g. to enable us		
Relative	who, which, that etc., e.g. which is 50-80 km above the Earth		
Possessive	our, his etc e.g. our planet		
Conjunctions and connective			
Additive	and, also as well etc., e.g. blue, yellow, black, green and red		
Causal	because, so etc., e.g. because he believed that the world was ready		
	for this new international sporting competition		
Adjectives:	e.g. thin, first, red, black		
Adverbs:			
Of frequency	mostly, always, sometimes, never etc., e.g. It is mostly found.		
Of place	here, there etc., e.g. here in the troposphere		
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g.		
Quantifiers:	very, some etc., e.g. a very important gas		
Empty subject (there/it) + e			
	e.g. There are four layers in the atmosphere.		



Text Structure - Description	THE OLYMPIC FLAG	Language Features Use of nouns that refer to a particular thing, e.g. The Olympic flag
Introduction to the subject	The Olympic flag, along with the Olympic flame, is a powerful symbol of the modern Olympic games. It is raised at the opening ceremony, then a flock of pigeons is released	Use of pronouns to track the subject, e.g. it
	to show that the games are open. After this, the Olympic flame is lit. During the closing ceremony, the flame is extinguished, and then the flag is lowered. The first modern	Use of describing adjectives, e.g. yellow, red, powerful
	Olympics were held in Athens in 1896.	Use of prefixes which give help give clues to the meanings of words. e.g. ex - meaning out - shows that ex-tinguished means to put out,
Description - including physical	The Olympic flag has a white background and in the centre there are five interlaced	other prefixes - re - sym
characteristics	rings. These rings are blue, yellow, black, green and red. The blue ring is on the left next	
	to the pole. These rings symbolise the five continents joined together in the Olympic Movement.	Use of suffixesment, ition - ful - showing noun and adjective forms
		Use of detailed noun groups to build up the description, e.g. five
	Baron Pierre de Coubertin of France, who began the first modern Olympic games, designed the flag. He started the modern Olympics, based on the sports competitions in Ancient Greece, because he believed that the world was ready for this new	interlaced rings, the five continents joined together in the Olympic Movement
	international sporting competition.	Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, represents
		Use of adverbial phrases to add detail, e.g. in the Olympic Movement, next to the pole, when the games are open

English Language Intensive Programme

Text Structure - Description	THE ATMOSPHERE	Language Features
Introduction to the subject	The atmosphere is a thin blanket of gases which is wrapped around our planet, Earth. The two main gases in the atmosphere are nitrogen (78%) and oxygen	Use of nouns that refer to a particular thing, e.g. our planet, the Earth.
	(21%). The remaining 1% includes a number of other gases and water vapour. Without the atmosphere, there would be no life as we know it on Earth.	Use of technical nouns, e.g. stratosphere
Description - of particular		Note. It is very important to learn that prefixes and suffixes can be used to
characteristics	There are four layers in the atmosphere. They are the troposphere, the stratosphere, the mesosphere and the thermosphere. The air gets thinner and	help build understanding of word families - e.gsphere, stratos-
	colder as it goes up higher in the atmosphere.	Use of pronouns to track the subject, e.g. it, us
	The troposphere is the first layer. It reaches 12 kilometres above Earth and contains three-quarters of the atmosphere's gases. It is thick and like soup. Most	Use of describing adjectives, e.g. thin, and determiners - e.g. other gases
	weather is here in the troposphere.	Use of detailed noun groups/phrases, e.g. the two main gases, the harmful ultra-violet rays from the Sun (the prepositional phrase - from the Sun - is
	The second layer is the stratosphere, which is found 12-50 kilometres above Earth. It contains a thin layer of ozone, a very important gas. Ozone protects our planet	embedded in or part of, the noun phrase)
	from the harmful ultraviolet rays from the Sun. The ozone layer in the stratosphere has been damaged by pollution from Earth. It is too hard for humans to breathe in	Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, has
	the stratosphere, because there's not enough oxygen. To enable us to breathe at this height, the air must be pressurised, as it is in planes.	Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. from Earth, above the Earth, at this height
		Use of passive voice, e.g. It is found in 12-50 kms above the Earth, the air
	The third layer is the mesosphere which is 50-80 kilometres above Earth. Meteors from space burn up in the mesosphere.	must be pressurised
		Text organisation - Most sentences begin with a similar structure (ie. a
	The fourth layer is the thermosphere, 80-300 kilometres above Earth and beyond this is outer space.	similar grammatical theme) - which orders the information, first-fourth layer

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop appropriate vocabulary especially prefixes and suffixes and root words used in scientific contexts
- Follow the text structure and language features of an information report
- Understand the purpose of an information report
- Understand and respond to an information report either orally or in writing
- Read aloud and silently an information report with particular attention to:
- developing phonological and graphological cues including letter sound knowledge, sound blending morphemes
- practising segmenting words into syllables
- chunking language into meaningful chunks
- punctuation conventions
- stress, rhythm and intonation

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

All curriculum areas - endangered animals, Solar System, plants, countries, cities, food, nutrition, health, drugs, computers, transport, ecosystems, celebrations, art, famous people, money systems, education, exploration, settlement, landmarks

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Find topic word of sentence or topic sentence of paragraph. Distinguish between main ideas and details and sequence text
- Complete cloze
- Complete comprehension activities and information transfer tasks (e.g. grid completion, changing written information into a diagram or graph).

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Build field knowledge (pre-reading activities)
- Model reading emphasising pronunciation, intonation, rhythm, stress etc.
- Demonstrate use of tables of contents, headings, sub headings, index
- Demonstrate text structure and language features
- Demonstrate use of visual texts, e.g. photographs, diagrams, graphs, maps
- Encourage active reading by students, e.g. highlighting, underlining, completing advance organisers

Joint/guided construction

- Develop semantic map/matrix
- Predict contents or headings of an information report
- Track and highlight reference chains.
- Identify base words then study suffixes, prefixes and comparative and superlative adjective forms
- Find irrelevant information in a text or vocab list or supply missing information.

- Match endings and beginnings of sentences
- Separate and sequence two information reports on similar topics or read two similar texts on the same topic and fill in a Same and Different Chart for the two texts
- Research topic using advance organisers and other Guided Reading
- Label diagrams, maps, graphs etc., or construct charts from texts.

Grammar Scope

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Australia, Antarctica
Common nouns	e.g. kangaroos, shelf, iceberg
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, to, on etc., e.g. in most areas of Australia, to Antarctica
Of time and date	on, after, before, at etc., e.g. at night
Of purpose	for etc., e.g. for balance
Of duration	during, since etc., e.g. during winter
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the oceans
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. an ice-shelf
Omission of article before	
most proper nouns,	
with uncountable nouns,	e.g. of Antarctica
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we, they etc., e.g. They live in most areas of Australia.
Object	it, him, her, us etc., e.g. the oceans around it
Possessive	our, her, my, their etc., e.g. Kangaroos hop on their back legs.
Conjunctions and connective	
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. two short front legs and two long back legs
Causal	because, so etc., e.g. Because of the ice-shelf, ships cannot reach
Causar	the coast.
Adjectives:	e.g. brown, grey, short, long, ice covered, thick
	superlative forms - note the suffixes -est and -iest which differ
	according to the last letter of the base word if it ends in a y, the
	superlative will be -iest e.glonely=loneliest, windy, but cold=coldest
Adverbs:	
Of frequency	usually, always, sometimes, never etc., e.g. Usually an iceberg is very big.
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. This is called an ice-shelf. These are
	called icebergs.
Quantifiers:	very, some etc., e.g. Icebergs are very dangerous.
Quantiners.	very, some etc., e.g. reebergs are very dangerous.

Empty subject (there/it) + ex	
	e.g. It is dark all day.
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. Where do they live? What do they eat?
Subject reversal 'do' support	e.g. Are kangaroos white?
when no auxiliary	e.g. Do kangaroos eat meat?
Modal 'can'	e.g. Can kangaroos move fast?
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, they do. No, they don't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is. No, it isn't.
Verbs:	
Present tense verbs	e.g. Kangaroos eat grass. Kangaroos live in most area of Australia. Day and night are different.
Infinitive verbs	e.g. to get through
Passive voice	e.g. Special ships are needed.
Conditional constructions:	
Punctuation:	e.g. Special ships are needed if the ice is extra thick. e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas, paragraph
•	acked through repetition of the main participant the first element of almost every sentence and paragraph.

Text Structure - Information Report

General statement - Classification identifies and classifies the subject

Description - including appearance, breeding and habits, habitat, behaviour etc.

KANGAROOS

Kangaroos are marsupials. They are animals which are native to Australia.

Appearance:

Kangaroos can grow to two metres tall. They have brown or grey fur. They have two short front legs and two long back legs. Their tails are very strong and are used for balance.

Habitat:

They live in most areas of Australia.

Feeding Habits:

Kangaroos eat grasses and small plants. They feed at night.

Movements:

Kangaroos hop on their back legs. They can move as fast as 50 kilometres per hour.

Breeding:

Young kangaroos are called 'joeys'. They are very small when they are born and live and develop in their mothers' pouches for about nine months. They drink their mothers' milk.

Language Features

Use of general nouns, e.g. kangaroos

Use of timeless present - typical of much scientific writing, e.g. is, eat, feed

Use of relating verbs, e.g. have, is

Use of adverbial phrases to locate, e.g. in its mother's pouch

Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. small, brown, grey

Use of action verbs to build information, e.g. drinks, eat

Text organisation

Sentences and statements throughout. Focus of information is the kangaroos. The first phrase (grammatical theme) in every sentence refers to kangaroos through repetition of the grammatical theme. This is a reference chain which is an identity chain and helps organise the text. i.e. Kangaroos, They..., Their tails, They..., Young kangaroos, They...

Use of complex sentences, e.g. They are very small when they are born and live and develop in their mothers' pouches for about nine months.

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 11. can read, understand and respond to an information report

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2

Text Structure - Information Report	ANTARCTICA	Language Features Use of general nouns, e.g. Antarctica
Classification	Antarctica is the coldest, windiest and loneliest of all the seven continents. It also has the highest mountains.	Use of timeless present typical of much scientific writing, e.g. break, freeze
Description	Temperature In the coldest parts of Antarctica the temperature is usually between -40° and -70° Celsius during winter. Amount of daylight	Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, has Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. during winter, between -40° and -70° Celsius, during the coldest time
Description	In Antarctica, day and night are different from what we are used to. During the coldest time, it is dark all day as well as all night. Ice shelf Antarctica is so cold that some of the oceans around it freeze as well. This is called an ice shelf. Because of the ice shelf which forms, ships cannot reach the coast. Sometimes	Use of adjectives, e.g. cold, dangerous, big, windiest - note the superlative - iest and - est endings which show it is the strongest form Use of action verbs, e.g. sail, freeze
Background information	bits of the ice shelf break off. These are called icebergs. Travellers to Antarctica Icebergs are very dangerous for ships because usually an iceberg is very big and only the peak is seen on top of the ocean, with the rest underwater. Travellers to Antarctica need special ships which can sail through the ice-covered waters. The ships need to be	Sentences and statements used throughout Coherence of text. First phrase in sentences (Grammatical theme) relates directly to Antarctica in all sections except the last. This keeps the focus of information on the topic
	very strong to get through the thick ice. Special ships called ice-breakers are needed if the ice is extra thick.	Use of complex sentences, e.g. Because of the ice shelf which forms, ships cannot reach the coast.(Makes the reason the focus of the sentence, because it comes first as the grammatical theme)

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop appropriate vocabulary especially prefixes and suffixes and root words used in scientific contexts
- Follow the text structure and language features of a procedure
- Understand the purpose of a procedure
- Understand and respond to a procedure either orally or in writing
- Read aloud and silently a procedure with particular attention to:
 - developing phonological and graphological cues including letter sound knowledge, sound blending morphemes
 - practising segmenting words into syllables
 - chunking language into meaningful chunks
 - punctuation conventions
 - stress, rhythm and intonation

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Recipes, class instructions, scientific experiments, computers, craft, games, everyday procedures, resuscitation, solid shapes, flow charts, models, geometry, fire drill

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Complete a task from written instructions
- Complete comprehension activities, e.g. cloze of action verbs, sequencing

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Explain and develop technical language
- Display a range of formats for procedures and identify purpose and steps
- Consider effectiveness of visual aids accompanying text
- Highlight action verbs, adverbs and adverbial phrases

Joint/guided construction

- Construct flow chart from a model text
- Follow a procedure, e.g. recipe, experiment, craft
- Complete sequence activities
- Play games, e.g. barrier, role play, What happens next?

- Collect examples of different procedures, e.g. manuals, recipes, craft and Science texts
- Match pictures and text
- Complete cloze, classify vocab and sequence text
- Follow written instructions, e.g. computer use, vending machine instructions, experimental set up

Grammar Scope			
Nouns: Common nouns	e.g. jars, thread, stalactites, seed	Verbs: Present tense verbs	e.g. As the water evaporates a column of crystals forms.
common nouns	(technical and general vocabulary)	Future tense verbs	e.g. Tiny stalactites will grow.
Prepositions:	(Imperative verbs	e.g. fill, put, check, leave, choose, measure
Of place	along, in, on etc., e.g. along the thread, in a warm place, on the cotton wool	Infinitive verbs Modals	e.g. To make your own stalactites. e.g. The two solutions should move along the thread.
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with water	Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/ lower case,
Of duration	for, since etc., e.g. for several days		full stops, commas, numerals
Articles:			
Definite	the, e.g. the two jars		
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a dish		
Omission of article before			
most proper nouns,			
with uncountable nouns,	e.g. with water		
Pronouns:			
subject	l, you, we, they etc., e.g. as you can		
object	it, them, her, us etc., e.g. Let it hang down.		
Conjunctions and connectiv	/es:		
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. and put a saucer between them		
Temporal	until, first, second, finally etc., e.g. Add some water until the cotton		
	wool is damp.		
Adjectives:	e.g. both, warm, few, woollen, good, white, smooth		
Quantifiers:	very, some etc., e.g. Add some water.		
Question formation:			
'wh'	e.g. What do you do first? When do you add the water?		
Subject reversal	e.g. Are the stalagmites in the centre?		
'do' support			
when no auxiliary	e.g. Does the washing soda dissolve?		
Modal 'can'	e.g. Can you see the stalactites?		
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it does. No, it doesn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is. No, it isn't.		

Note: This is not the text structure for a science experiment report. This is only the part known as method.

Text Structure - Procedure	STALACTITES	Language Features
Goal or aim	Aim: To make your own stalactites.	Use of nouns and noun groups, e.g. glass jars, woollen thread - technical e.g. stalactites general e.g. saucer
Materials and equipment	Equipment: Two glass jars, woollen thread, washing soda, warm water, saucer.	Use of commands, e.g. dissolve, fix, twist Use of personal pronoun (second person) as direct
Steps to accomplish goal	Method: 1. Fill the two jars with very warm water. 2. Dissolve as much washing soda in each one as you can.	address to the reader i.e. you, your Use of action verbs, e.g. move, put
	 Place the two jars in a warm place and put a saucer between them. Twist several strands of woollen thread together. Fix one end of the thread in each jar and let it hang down above the saucer. The two solutions should move along the thread until they reach the middle 	Use of adverbial phrases to locate, e.g. along the thread, in each jar
	and then drip onto the saucer. 6. Leave the jars in place for several days.	Use of technical language to build up the field, e.g. dissolve, evaporates, stalactites
Observation	As the water evaporates, a column of crystals forms. Tiny stalactites and stalagmites will grow in the centre of the wool.	
READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 12. can read, understand and respond to a procedure

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2

Note: This is not the text structure for a science experiment report. This is only the part known as method.

Text Structure - Procedure		Language Features
	GROWING A BEAN SEED IN COTTON WOOL	
Goal or aim		Use of nouns and noun groups, e.g. six white bean seeds,
	Equipment:	clear dish
Equipment/apparatus	Clear dish, cotton wool, six white bean seeds, water	
		Use of definite article to specify a particular noun e.g. the
	Method:	seeds, the cotton wool
Steps to accomplish goal	1. Choose six good, white, smooth, hard bean seeds.	
1 1 5	2. Measure the length, width and depth of one seed.	Use of commands, e.g. choose, measure, place
	3. Place some cotton wool onto a dish.	
	4. Put the seeds in a circle on the cotton wool.	Use of action verbs, e.g. add, draw
	5. Add some water until the cotton wool is damp.	
	6. Draw the seeds on the cotton wool and label.	Use of adverbial phrases to locate, e.g. onto a dish, on th
	7. Place the dish on the bench near the window.	cotton wool
	in the distribution are seried free without	
		Use of technical language to build up the field, e.g. cotto
		wool, bean seed

Stage 2

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING

13. can read, understand and respond to a narrative

Language Outcomes 13 (a)

Note that many texts of all types have elements of more than one text type. i.e. there are some aspects that fit the narrative model, but there may also be features we would expect to see in recounts, explanations or descriptions within small sections of the text. However, at the whole text level they follow the general pattern of a specific text type.

Suggested Teaching Components

- Develop appropriate vocabulary
- Follow the text structure and language features of a fictional or factual narrative
- Understand the purpose of a narrative
- Understand and respond to a narrative either orally or in writing
- Read aloud and silently a narrative with particular attention to:
 - developing phonological and graphological cues including letter sound knowledge, sound blending morphemes
 - practising segmenting words into syllables
 - chunking language into meaningful chunks
 - punctuation conventions
 - stress, rhythm and intonation
 - recognising main ideas and details

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Biography and history, (relating to a range of curriculum areas) literature themes, drama, films, legends, poetry

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Complete comprehension activities in a variety of ways.
- Identify text structure
- Use teaching and learning activities as assessment tasks

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Provide background knowledge to predict, elicit and extend vocabulary
- Provide a variety of narratives, e.g. short stories, videos, novels, for shared, individual and guided reading, historical events, sophisticated picture books
- Demonstrate structural and language features including dialogue conventions
- Explain how use of language reflects purpose

Joint/guided construction

- Predict story from title and visual information; word bank
- Complete matrix showing setting, characters/participants, events and resolution,
- Complete a 4 x 3 grid (Making up any headings) e.g.

3 important ideas	3 questions about the main character	3 best adjectives to describe main character	3 new words I learnt

- Discuss purpose and implications of illustrations
- Compare book and film version of a narrative setting, story line, characters

- Sequence and reconstruct text
- Complete comprehension activities, e.g. 3 level guide, true/false questions
- Highlight a word chain
- Find evidence to support opinions on characters, participants and events

Grammar Scope

Nouns:		Question formation:	
Proper nouns	e.g. D Day, Mahuika, Anna, France	'wh'	e.g. What did the Allies think? When did this happen?
Common nouns	e.g. boats, elders, mokopuna, fingernails, history	Subject reversal	e.g. Is she angry? What will we do?
singular	e.g. fingernail	'do' support	
plural	e.g. fingernails	when no auxiliary	e.g. Do you know where she is?
count	e.g. eyes, signal	Negation:	e.g. Don't be angry.
non-count (mass)	e.g, mischief	Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it does. No, it doesn't. yes, it has. No, it hasn't.
Prepositions:			Yes, it is. No, it isn't.
Of place	e.g. into France, from the trees	Verbs:	
Of time and date	on, after, before etc., e.g. after many fierce battles	Present tense verbs	e.g. Who are you and where do you come from?
Articles:		Past tense verbs	e.g. shook, travelled, ended
Definite	the, e.g. the first day, the Allied army	regular	e.g. whispered, asked,
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a hawk,	irregular	e.g. gave, shook, died, fought, chose
Omission of articles before		Past continuous tense verbs	e.g. The ships were waiting.
most proper nouns and		Past perfect tense verbs	e.g.the German army had taken over in France.
with uncountable nouns	e.g. France,	Future tense verbs	e.g. "I'll go.", "I will give you fire."
Pronouns:		Imperative verbs	e.g. "Go to Mahuika",
Subject	l, you, we, they, he etc., e.g. she became very angry.	Saying, thinking and	
	Four years later, they went back.	opinion verbs	e.g. At last Mahuika realised
Object	him, her, us, me etc., e.g. Māui had been tricking her	Modals:	e.g. they had to wait for good weather
Possessive	your, her, my their etc., e.g. his ancestors	Direct speech:	e.g. "I'm not afraid," laughed Māui.
Conjunctions and connective	es:	Simple contractions:	can't, I'm, what's etc., e.g. I can't. I'm too afraid.
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. Māui liked making mischief and teasing.	Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, inverted commas, exclamation marks, full stops,
Causal	because, so, as etc., e.g. because they had to wait for good weather		commas, upper/lower case, question marks, paragraphs
Temporal	as soon as, first, second, as etc., e.g. as the water reached her		
Adjectives:	e.g. small, important, German, exact, first		
Adverbs:			
Of manner	quickly, slowly, anxiously etc., e.g. They waited anxiously,		
	he thought wickedly		
Empty subject (there/it) + ex			
	e.g. There were hundreds of planes		

Text Structure - Historical Narrative	D DAY WORLD WAR 2	Language Features
Title	D Day is remembered as a very important day in history as the beginning of the end of	Use of action verbs, e.g. was forced, to defeat
Orientation - includes time and place	World War 2.	Use of various tenses including past and present, e.g. waited, is
and participants		
	In June 1940, the Allied army was forced to leave France because they were not strong	Use of direct speech, e.g. "It's D Day!"
	enough to defeat the German army who had taken over in France.	Use of thinking verbs, e.g. chose
Initial complication	Four years later, they went back. It would be difficult and dangerous to get the British	
	army and its allies back into France, as they had to get across the water from England	Use of time connectives, e.g. at last, next day
Further complications	without the Germans realising what they were doing.	Use of complex sentences, e.g. In June 1940, the British army
		was forced to leave France because they were not strong
	The commanders of the armies could not choose an exact date to tell all the armies to	enough to defeat the German army who had taken over in
	invade France, because they had to wait for good weather, so the small boats carrying many of the soldiers would not capsize and drown them. D Day was the code name	France.
	they chose to keep the plan secret.	Use of detailed noun phrases to build description, e.g. this
		terrible world war
	The first day they chose, June 5th, was too rough and they waited anxiously all day	the of a book is help and a single formation of the many second
	to see what the weather would be like on the next day. There were 4,000 ships and hundreds of small boats waiting and hiding from the German army. There were also	Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. into France, after many more battles in different parts of the world
	hundreds of shall boats waiting to fly into France. Next day was June 6th 1944. At last the	
	weather was good. They could begin.	Use of adjectives, e.g. small, good, British
		Use of adverbs to add meaning to the verbs, e.g. anxiously
Decelution	The generals gave the signal to all the armies. "It's D Day! Go!" and the Allied forces	ose of davenos to add meaning to the veros, e.g. anxiously
Resolution	fought their way into France and defeated the Germans. One year later, after many more fierce battles in different parts of the world, this terrible world war ended.	Text organisation.
	more heree battles in amerent parts of the world, this temple world war chaed.	Almost every paragraph has a synonym or substitution for "army" as
	Nowadays, when some people want to say that something important is going to	the first element of the topic sentence to help track the information
Coda	happen, like a wedding, they say "D day is tomorrow!" Many don't know that it is a	through the text. Para 1 D Day, Para 2 (In June 1940) the Allied army,
	day in history.	Para 3 (Four years later) <i>they</i> , Para 4 The commanders of the army, Para
		5 The first day <i>they</i> chose, Para 6 <i>The generals,</i> Para 7 Change of focus, <i>Nowadays,</i> so armies is no longer the focus.

English Language Intensive Programme

13 (d)

ext Structure - Narrative itle	HOW MĂUI PLAYED WITH FIRE Long long ago Māui, who was half god and half man, lived in Aotearoa, Land of the Long White Cloud. Māui liked making mischief and teasing.	Language Features Use of word families and word chains to build information, e.g. fire, flame, burn, put out, fingernails
Drientation - introduces	One day, Māui decided to tease everyone by putting out all the cooking fires. He knew that they could only get fire from Mahuika, the goddess of fire. "I wonder what will happen if they have no fire," he thought wickedly. He	Use of action verbs, e.g. waited, crept, rubbing
nain characters, time nd place	waited till night fell, then he crept from house to house and put out all the fires.	Use of various tenses including past, future, present, e.g. lived, was, come, would happen
nitial complication	In the morning the people woke and found that they had no cooking fires. "What has happened?" they all shouted angrily. "What will we do?" Māui's mother was one of the tribe's elders. She called one of her servants. "Go to Mahuika!" she ordered. "Ask her for more fire for the world."	Use of direct speech, e.g. 'Who are you and where do you come from?" "It's D Day. Go!".
	He shivered and shook with fear and whispered "I can't. I'm too afraid." Māui's mother was full of rage, but her	Use of reported speech. e.g. He asked her for more fire.
	servant would not go. "I'm not afraid," laughed Māui. "I'll go." Māui's mother told him to leave at once.	Use of saying verbs, e.g. asked, whispered, shouted
	After days of travelling, Māui reached Mahuika's cave. "O great ancestress," he called, "we have lost our fire. We need more." Out came a fierce woman who had fiery red eyes and long red fingernails like claws. "Who are you	Use of thinking verbs, e.g.realised
urther complications	and where do you come from?" she roared. "I come from where the wind comes," said Māui. "Then you are my mokopuna, my grandchild and I will give you fire," Mahuika replied.	Use of time conjunctions, e.g. at last, Nowadays
nd sequence of events	She pulled a flame from her first fingernail and gave it to Māui. He wanted to see what would happen if he put the fire out so he threw it into the water. He returned to Mahuika and asked for more fire. She pulled out the nail of her second finger, but once again, he put out the fire. He went back several times until she had pulled out all her fingernails and her	Use of compound and complex sentences, e.g. She pulled a flame from her first fingernail and gave it to Māui. He wanted to see what would happen if he put the fire out so he threw it into the water.
	toenails except for one big toe. At last Mahuika realised Māui had been tricking her and she became very angry. She pulled out her last toenail.	Use of detailed noun phrases to build description, e.g. long red fingernails like claws
esolution	Instead of giving it to Māui, she threw it onto the ground, setting the ground on fire. Māui began to run, but the fire was snapping at his feet. He changed himself into a hawk and tried to fly high above the flames. The fire reached high into the sky and burnt his wings. This is why the hawk has brown feathers. The forest and all the	Use of adverbial phrases to locate, e.g. to his village, into the trees
	land were on fire and Maui nearly died.	Use of adjectives, e.g. dangerous, brown, second
	He called on his ancestors to send rain. The sky opened and rain began to fall. Māui was safe. The rainwater rose and began to cover the land and Mahuika was afraid. The last of her fire was left in her hair and as the water	Use of adverbs, e.g. angrily, high
	reached her, the fire seeds jumped into the trees. This is why we can get fire by rubbing the wood from some trees.	Use of nouns or pronouns identifying participants in theme position in sentence (as first element of clause)
Reorientation	Māui travelled home to his village, but he did not give them back their fire. They had to make it by rubbing the sticks from the trees with the fire seeds. Even today, people make fire by rubbing sticks together.	as this tracks the actions of the participants. e.g Māui, He, the people, Māui's mother, She.

- Develop appropriate vocabulary
- Follow the text structure and language features of an explanation (text/flowchart/diagram)
- Understand the purpose of an explanation
- Understand and respond to an explanation either orally or in writing
- Read aloud and silently an explanation with particular attention to:
 developing phonological and graphological cues including letter sound knowledge, sound blending morphemes
- practising segmenting words into syllables
- chunking language into meaningful chunks
- punctuation conventions
- stress, rhythm and intonation
- recognising main ideas and details

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

All curriculum areas e.g life cycles, food chains, migration, periods in art, computers, New Zealand Māori and settler history, volcanoes, weather, visual arts, technology, papier mache, weaving, water cycle, drugs, mathematical problems

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Read an explanation and present the information visually or in diagram form
- Complete comprehension task, e.g. cloze, true/false questions
- Sequence an explanation, or supply a missing section in a summary

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Build field knowledge
- Model text structure and discuss purpose (include non-verbal text)
- Highlight words that show cause and effect, reference etc.
- Demonstrate how to summarise written information using flow charts

Joint/guided construction

- Match, e.g. causes and effects, technical words and definitions, non-verbal and verbal texts
- Complete jigsaw activity
- Complete sequencing activity
- Read an explanation and prepare a flow chart or diagram, e.g. life cycle

- Develop glossary of technical terms
- Reconstruct text
- Complete cloze/sentences focussing especially on conjunctions, e.g. because, so, as
- Prepare a poster presenting explanation
- Complete comprehension activities, e.g. 3 level guide

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 14. can read, understand and respond to a simple explanation

Grammar Scope	
Nouns:	
Common nouns	e.g. sun, flesh, animal, skeleton
Prepositions:	-
Of place	to, at, in, on, over etc., e.g. to the mountains, at the surface
Of duration	over, for, since etc., e.g. over millions of years
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the bones, the fossil
Pronouns:	
Subject	I, you, we, they, it etc., e.g. It reaches the cold temperature.
Relative	which, that etc., e.g. Erosion removes the rock layers that cover
	the fossil skeleton.
Conjunctions and connect	tives:
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. Sediments cover and accumulate.
Temporal	till, first, second, finally etc., e.g. The vapour rises till it reaches
	the cold temperature.
Adjectives:	e.g. rock, cold
Adverbs:	
Of manner	deeply, quickly, carefully etc., e.g. This buries the skeleton deeply.
Of place	back, out, here etc., e.g. finally flows back
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. This buries the skeleton deeply.
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. What exposes the fossil?
Subject reversal 'do' support	e.g. Is the skeleton a fossil?
when no auxiliary	e.g. Does the water evaporate?
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it does. No, it doesn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is.
	No, it isn't.
Verbs:	
Present tense verbs	e.g. dies, decays, cover, blows, forms
Infinitive verbs	e.g. leaving the bones to be buried
Passive voice	e.g. The fossil skeleton is exposed and is discovered.
Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops,
	commas, numerals



Text Structure - Explanation

Statement of phenomenon

Explanation sequence - series of events

THE WATER CYCLE

- 1. The sun heats the water and the water evaporates.
- 2. The water vapour rises till it reaches the cold temperature and condenses as clouds.
- 3. The wind blows the clouds to the mountains and land.
- 4. The water precipitates as rain, snow and hail.
- 5. The water forms rivers, creeks, dams etc.
- 6. The water run off finally flows back to the ocean where the process begins again.

Language Features

Use of variety of action verbs to build topic information, e.g. evaporates, condenses, precipitates

Use of adjectives, e.g. cold

Use of time conjunctions, e.g. finally

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. to the ocean, as clouds

Use of complex sentences, e.g. The water vapour rises till it reaches the cold temperature.

Use of compound sentences, e.g. The sun heats the water and the water evaporates.

Use of numbering system to sequence the events

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING

14. can read, understand and respond to a simple explanation

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2



Text Structure - Explanation	The Formation of Fossils
Statement of Phenomenon	1. The animal dies.
Explanation sequence - series of events	2. The flesh of the animal decays, leaving the bones to be buried and fossilised.
series of events	3. Sediments cover the skeleton and accumulate over millions of years. This buries the skeleton deeply.
	4. Erosion removes the rock layers that cover the fossil skeleton.
	5. The fossil skeleton is exposed at the surface and is discovered.

Language Features

Use of a variety of action verbs to build topic information, e.g. decays, buried, fossilised

Use of passive voice e.g. is exposed, is discovered (generalises agency)

Use of adverbial phrases e.g. at the surface, over millions of years

Use of adverbs e.g. deeply

Use of numbering system to sequence events and match to visual text

- Develop appropriate vocabulary
- Follow the text structure and language features of a persuasive text (opinion)
- Understand the purpose of an opinion
- Understand and respond to a simple opinion either orally or in writing
- Read aloud and silently an opinion with particular attention to:
 developing phonological and graphological cues including letter
- sound knowledge, sound blending morphemes
- practising segmenting words into syllables
- chunking language into meaningful chunks
- punctuation conventions
- stress, rhythm and intonation recognising main ideas and details

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

School issues, personal issues, social issues, environmental issues

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Reconstruct text
- Complete comprehension tasks

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Build field knowledge
- Demonstrate text structure, language features and purpose of texts
- Introduce pre-reading activities, e.g. students read assertions and give opinions, reasons
- Demonstrate the difference between statements of fact and opinion; develop word bank of opinion pointers

Joint/guided construction

- Match cards, e.g. opinions and supporting details, for/ against an argument
- Highlight arguments as they develop through the text
- Reconstruct text through sequencing activities
- Construct clines showing how words and phrases differ in intensity (modality)

- Complete cloze
- Match beginnings with endings of split sentences
- Summarise a text using proforma/writing frame
- Reconstruct a text

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 15. can read, understand and respond to a simple opinion

Grammar Scope

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. National Parks, Olympics
Common nouns	e.g. plants, animals, people, swimming pool, community
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, on, over etc., e.g. in cities, in their natural environment
Of purpose	for etc., e.g. for preserving, for playing
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the future
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a pool
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we, they etc., e.g. I think it is very important
Possessive	our, her, my, their etc., e.g. in their natural environment
Relative	who, which, that etc., e.g. people who live in cities
Conjunctions and connective	PS:
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. the clean air and the quiet
Causal	because, so, as etc., e.g. We should keep National Parks because
	they are very important.
Temporal/Logical	firstly, secondly, finally, in conclusion etc., e.g. Firstly, swimming is
	very good exercise. Secondly, there isn't very much for the young
	people to do.
Adjectives:	e.g. clean, natural, good, safe, important
Adverbs:	
Of place	somewhere, out, there etc., e.g. would have somewhere safe
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. these plants and animals
Quantifiers:	very, some etc., e.g. They are very important
Question formation:	
'wh'	e.g. Why should we have National Parks? What do we do
	in National Parks?
Subject reversal	e.g. Are National Parks used for playing?
'do' support	
when no auxiliary	e.g. Do people like the clean air?
Modal	e.g. Should children learn to swim?
Negation:	e.g. They wouldn't get into trouble.

	Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it does. No, it doesn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is. No, it isn't.
	Verbs:	
	Present tense verbs	e.g. is, known, live
	Future tense verbs	e.g. People of the future will not be able to see these plants.
		Swimming will make people healthier.
	Infinitive verbs	e.g. to keep, to see, to swim, to compete
	Verbal nouns (gerunds)	e.g. playing, preserving, bushwalking
	Modals	e.g. We should keep National Parks. A good swimmer
		could train.
	Passive voice	e.g. If their natural environment is destroyed.
	Conditional constructions:	e.g. If their natural environment is destroyed, the plants and animals may become extinct.
	Simple contractions:	wouldn't, don't, isn't etc., e.g. They wouldn't get into trouble.
	Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full
		stops, commas, paragraphs
is		
r r		
1		



Text Structure - Opinion	LET'S KEEP NATIONAL PARKS	Language Features Use of technical words, e.g. environment, pollution
Title Statement of position	I think it is very important to have National Parks. As we all know, National Parks are used for playing, picnics and bushwalking. National Parks help to protect natural environments for plants, animals and people.	Use of thinking verbs, e.g. think Use of modality, e.g. should
Arguments	Firstly, people who live in cities enjoy going to National Parks to get away from the noise and pollution. They like the clean air and the quiet. Another reason why National Parks are important is that they provide a place where native animals and plants will be safe and survive. If their natural environment is destroyed, the plants and animals may become extinct. Also, people of the future will not be able to see these plants and animals in their natural environment.	Use of complex sentences, e.g. Another reason why National Parks are important is that they provide a place where native animals and plants will be safe and survive. Use of connectives to sequence arguments, e.g. firstly, secondly Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, are
Reinforcement of position statement	In conclusion, we should keep National Parks because they are very important for preserving the natural environment.	Use of connectives to conclude argument, e.g. in conclusion

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 15. can read, understand and respond to a simple opinion

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2

Text Structure - Opinion	A SWIMMING POOL IN OUR COMMUNITY	Language Features
Introduction to the subject -	I think the council should provide a swimming pool for	Use of modality, e.g. should, could
Statement of position	our community.	Use of complex sentences, e.g. Finally children should lear to swim so they don't drown if they fall in the water.
Arguments	Firstly, swimming is very good exercise and will make the	
	people in our community healthier.	Use of connectives to sequence arguments, e.g. firstly, secondly, finally
	Secondly, there isn't very much for the young people	
	to do in our community. A pool would mean the young people would have somewhere fun and safe to go and	Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, have
	they wouldn't get into trouble.	Use of conjunctions to show reasoning, e.g. so
	Thirdly, anyone who is a very good swimmer could train to compete in races like the Olympics.	Use of compound sentences, e.g. Swimming is very good exercise and will make the people in our community healthier.
	Finally, children should learn to swim so they don't drown if they fall in the water.	Use of adjectives, e.g. good, healthier, fun, safe
	in they fail in the water.	
Reinforcement of position statement	So you can see there are many reasons why we should have a pool in our community.	

- Develop appropriate vocabulary and recognise the difference between denotative and connotative language
- Follow the structure of a poem through, e.g. verse, stanza
- Understand the purpose of a poem
- Understand and respond to a simple poem either orally or in writing
- Follow and understand poetic devices, e.g. simile, metaphor, alliteration, onomatopoeia, rhyme (see text structure)
- Read aloud a poem with particular attention to:
 - developing phonological and graphological cues including letter sound knowledge, sound blending morphemes
 - practising segmenting words into syllables
 - chunking phrases
 - punctuation conventions (with awareness that these are often different in poetry)
 - stress, rhythm and intonation

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Self, animals, humorous poems, plants, people, places, emotions, senses, events, weather, songs

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Complete comprehension activity on a simple poem (e.g. 3 Level Guide)
- Read poem with appropriate stress, pause and intonation
- Find rhymed words and alliteration, similes etc.

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Discuss themes, emotions and vocabulary, e.g. anger, love, beauty
- Model reading a variety of poems/songs with emphasis on rhythm (clap), rhyme, if appropriate
- Discuss purpose and poetic devices, e.g. rhyme, repetition, imagery, alliteration, stanzas
- Present a range of simple poems and compare the structure and form
- Punctuate a poem
- Choral reading of a poem and/or dramatisation.

Joint/guided construction

- Compile and/or read a class book of favourite poems
- Highlight word chains within poems and develop word banks
- Prepare posters on feelings or other themes
- Complete matrix of different poem types and features
- Write a group poem, with each person constructing a line (with or without a model)

- List rhyming words, alliteration, pairs, similes
- Read/share L1 poem
- Complete simple matrix (nouns, adjectives, rhymes)
- Complete simple cloze with and without word bank
- Retell as prose version or write some questions for someone else to answer about the poem.

READING, UNDERSTANDING AND RESPONDING 16. can read, understand and respond to a simple poem

Grammar Scope		
oranina scope		
Nouns:		
Proper nouns	e.g. Frost	
Common nouns	e.g. man, sun	
Articles:		
Definite	the, e.g. the (sun's) rays	
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a man	
Pronouns:		
Subject	l, you, we, they etc., e.g. He melts	
Relative	wherever, who, which etc., e.g. wherever he goes	
Adjectives:	e.g. white, tip, frosty, frozen	
Adverbs:		
Of manner	hard, etc., e.g. It was raining hard.	
Question formation:		
'wh'	e.g. Why is the poem sad? What is the poem about?	
Subject reversal	e.g. Is rain sad?	
'do' support		
when no auxiliary	e.g. Does the frost melt in the sun?	
Vegation:	e.g. Frost doesn't last in the sun.	
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, she does. No, it doesn't.	
/erbs:		
Present tense verbs	e.g. is, melts	
Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas, lines, verses, stanzas, chorus	

Text Structure - Poem

Title

Irregular lines (free verse)

FROST

Frost is a man clothed in white.

He leaves frosty frozen prints wherever he goes,

On tip toes,

Plop! Plop!

He melts in the sun's rays.

Language Features

Poetic devices

Use of alliteration, e.g. frosty frozen

Use of personification, e.g. Frost is a man clothed in white.

Use of rhyme, e.g. goes, toes

Use of onomatopoeia, e.g. plop, plop



G

- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Write personal information in appropriate place on authentic and/ or modified forms, e.g. library application, enrolment forms
- Write numerical information in numbers or words correctly in appropriate places
- Spell familiar vocabulary correctly
- Follow graphic conventions, e.g. ticks, crosses, block letters
- Use black or blue pen where required

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Library membership, permission notes, job application forms, medical information records, banking forms, transport forms

Suggested Assessment Tasks

• Complete a variety of forms.

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Model using appropriate upper/lower case, e.g. block letters, using a variety of mediums
- Introduce new words, abbreviations using a glossary
- Model placing information and conventions on a variety of authentic and/or simplified forms, e.g. permission notes, library cards, job application forms, medical information/records
- Match abbreviations to full forms

Joint/guided construction

- Pair/class activities/games on collecting personal information
- Spelling test/dictation using vocabulary appropriate to personal information
- Complete form as a class
- Listen to recording and complete information on form
- Simple dictagloss based on personal information using forms

- Match abbreviations to meanings, explanations
- Practise completing various information/application forms

Stage 2	WRITING 17. can complete a formatted text	Language Outcomes	17 (b)
Grammar Scope			
Nouns:			
Proper	e.g. Auckland		
Common	e.g. address, name, date		
Prepositions:			
Of agency	by, e.g. by my child, to you		
Articles:			
Definite	the, e.g. the City Library		
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a member		
Pronouns:			
Subject	l, you, we etc., e.g. l agree		
Object	you, her, us etc., e.g. in touch with you		
Possessive	your, her, my, etc., e.g. your own number		
Verbs:			
Imperative verbs	e.g. Use block letters. Write N/A. Complete all sections.		
Punctuation:	e.g. upper/lower case, block letters		
Abbreviations:			
Titles	e.g. Mr, Mrs, Ms, Miss		
Addresses	e.g. Rd, St, Ave		
Sex	e.g. M, F		
Number	e.g. No.		
Date of Birth	e.g. DOB		
Not Applicable	e.g. N/ A		

Language Features

1

Use of common abbreviations, e.g. PIN

Use of imperatives, e.g. use, write

Use of common vocabulary for personal information, e.g. residential address, first name, postcode Use of instructions common to formatted text, e.g. use block letters

youth **membership**

CONDITIONS OF MEMBERSHIP

Please read the following information carefully and sign below.

You are responsible for all library materials issued on this card, and for any fees or charges that arise from its use. Please notify the library if your card is lost or stolen.

Please notify the library of any changes to your contact information. This will help us to keep in touch with you.

Fines over \$15 and/or 2 months old must be paid or access to some library services may be suspended.

The library card must be presented to access library services.

The library reserves the right to report any default of payment to a Debt Collection Agency.

You are entitled to access, and have corrected if necessary, the information that we keep on your library record at any time.

Please note that email communication may include Auckland City Libraries promotional material.

- · I am free from Library Debt and agree to take full responsibility for the appropriateness of material borrowed on this card by my child.
- I agree to follow the Auckland City Bylaws on Library use.
- I have been given a brochure on my rights and responsibilities as a member of Auckland City Libraries.
- I agree to return all material borrowed by the due date and in good condition.
- I will pay any money owed promptly and notify the Library of any change of address.
- I understand and accept the conditions of membership.
- I agree that the information provided on this form is correct and that failure to comply may result in suspension of library services.

youth membership



auckland citylibraries TÂMARI PÂTARA KÔHERU

Auckland City Libraries is bound by the Privacy Act 1993 and respects the privacy of the personal information you provide. A brochure stating our commitment and your rights will be given to you. You must provide your Name, Address and Date of Birth to obtain membership. Your Date of Birth Is a "Unique Identifier" to distinguish your Library Record.

Family Name or S	urname		-						
First Names 2 Postal Address	Street	******							
3	Suburb								_
4 Street Address (If different from ab	City iove)								
Contact Informati	on	5 Perso	onal Telepi	ione		6 Work	Telephone		
7 Gender (Please ci 8 Guardian's E-Mail contact for regular	(Only if this								
32 & 34 Notices		How wo	uld you pre	fer to be conta	cted?	Email	Mail	Telephone	
10 Date of Birth 14 Library PIN 4 d Security Access Ca		Day		Month Pleas	Year e choose your o	own number. Al	lows you to a	ccess Library Serv	ices online.



Language Features Use of common abbreviations, e.g. PO

.. ..

U	se	ot	titles	e.g.	Mr,	Ms,	etc	
---	----	----	--------	------	-----	-----	-----	--

6.1.1

Use of instructions common to formatted text, e.g. Complete this form

Use of commands, e.g. Post

Send in any 2 Gregg's Instant Coffee barcodes with this entry form and go into the draw to win 1 of 100 Air New Zealand travel vouchers worth \$500.

To enter, complete this form and send in with any 2 Gregg's Instant Coffee barcodes to: Gregg's Travel Promotion, PO Box 100986, North Shore Mail Centre, Auckland 1333.

□ Yes, I've enclosed 2 Gregg's Instant Coffee barcodes.

Title: MR / MRS / MS / MISS (circle one)

First name		1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-	1		1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
Last name		I	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	I	ľ	1		1	I	1	1		1	1	
Address		1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	I	1	1	I	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	Ì	
Suburb		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	I	1	1	
City		I	1	1	1	1	1	1	K	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	Ĩ	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	Ĩ	
Phone No	[]]	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	
Email	E T	Ē	1	T	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	T.	1	1	1	T	T	1	F	1	1	1	T	T.	ï	1	1	ï	T.	1	T.	1

Terms & Conditions: You may enter as many times as you like. Two barcodes must be enclosed with each entry as proof of purchase. Only 1 entry per envelope. You can supply barcades from any Gregg's Instant Caffee products, excluding Gregg's Bolero. Promotion ends 07/12/03. Entrities must be received by 12/12/03. Winners will be notified by phone or mail 17/12/03. Each winner will receive Air New Zealand travel vouchers to the value of \$500 to be used before 31/12/04. These vouchers are available for redemption at any Air New Zealand Travelcentre or by phoning 0800 737 000. Vouchers are not redeemable for cash. Entry is open to all N.Z. residents except staff and their immediate families of Cerebos Gregg's Limited and it's associated agencies. No responsibility will be taken for late, lost ar misdirected mail. Winners agree that their names may be used for reasonable PR purposes. Entrance into this promotion implies full acceptance of the terms and conditions. **Your Privacy:** Your personal details are being collected and will be held by Cerebos

Your Privacy: Your personal details are being collected and will be held by Cerebos Gregg's Limited at 291 East Tamaki Rd, East Tamaki, Auckland. This information will be kept completely confidential and will be used exclusively by Cerebos Gregg's Limited for the purpose of direct marketing. You have the right to access and correct any information held by Cerebos Gregg's Limited. If you do not wish to receive any further promotional material from Cerebos Gregg's Limited please tick here.

- Write using the text structure and language features of a recount
- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Employ upper and lower case appropriately
- Use correct spacing between words, lines, and paragraphs
- Set out work using appropriate layout, e.g. margins, date, headings, subheadings, dot points, columns
- Use appropriate pen colour
- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Personal experiences, e.g. migration, field trips, literature themes, writing in role, historical characters and events, celebrations, holidays, environment

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Complete cloze, sequencing activity
- Write a simple recount (use of software such as Kidpix is possible for ICT)

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use pictures, videos, maps to build field knowledge and identify people, places, events and make word banks and glossary for content words
- Model a range of written recounts and point out text features
- Deconstruct a text to illustrate its features
- Model construction of simple recount, e.g. using visual stimulus, student's life story

Joint/guided construction

- Match events, participants and places and write sentences using temporal markers
- Write a group/pair/individual recount; have another group comment and rewrite
- Sequence a model text
- Sequence photos/pictures from an excursion and write paragraphs; sequence paragraphs
- Write a paragraph using a timeline from a particular event then sequence paragraphs

- Complete cloze passages based on grammar focus items
- Write paragraphs using visual cues
- Depict recount visually, e.g. timeline
- Write a simple recount, e.g. journal entries, biographies
- Write the missing section of a recount (with or without word cues)

WRITING 18. can write a recount

Grammar Scope

Nouns:		Question formation:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Sunday, Auckland Museum	'wh'	e.g. Where did you go? What did you do there?
Common nouns	e.g. teachers, class, park, soccer	subject reversal	e.g. Was it on Friday? Were your friends there?
Prepositions:		'do' support	
Of place	to, at, in, on etc., e.g. to the Auckland Museum,	when no auxiliary	e.g. Did you go by train? Did you have a good day?
	at Britomart Station	Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, I did. No, I didn't. Yes, she was. No, she wasn't.
Of time and date	in, at, after, before, on etc., e.g. at 7pm, on Sunday	Verbs:	-
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with my brother	Past tense verbs	e.g. We left the museum. We caught the train. We went to see
Of duration	for, since etc., e.g. for about 20 minutes		the jewellery.
Articles:		Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops,
Definite	the, e.g. the teacher		commas, paragraphs
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a barbecue		
Omission of article before		Text organisation:	
most proper nouns,		Note stages of a recount text	
with uncountable nouns	e.g. on Sunday, at the Britomart Railway Station	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
Pronouns:			
Subject	l, you, we etc., e.g. We arrived.		
Possessive	our, her, my etc., e.g. my family, my class		
Conjunctions and connectiv	es:		
Temporal	after, when, then, firstly, finally etc., e.g. After 45 minutes		
·	we arrived at the Britomart Station.		
Additive	and etc., e.g. We arrived at the Britomart Station and		
	walked for about 20 minutes.		
Adjectives:	good, delicious etc., e.g. a very good day		
Adverbs:			
Of time	tomorrow, yesterday etc., e.g. Yesterday my class had a visit to		
	the Auckland Museum.		
Of manner	quickly, well etc., e.g. We slept well.		
Of place	off, here, there etc., e.g. and fell off		
Quantifiers:	very, some, many etc., e.g. many exhibitions		
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		

Text Structure - Recount	MUSEUM TRIP	Language Features
Orientation - introduces a setting in some detail and main characters involved in events	Yesterday my class had a visit to the Auckland Museum. We caught the train at 8.15 am.	Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. the Auckland Museum, class
	After 45 minutes, we arrived at the Britomart Station and walked for about 20 minutes to the Museum. It is a very	Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. very nice
	large building.	Use of conjunctions to sequence events in
Record of events - includes		time, e.g. then, next
some evaluation	About 10.25am we joined another class and entered	
	together. We saw many exhibitions, e.g. medals, books, souvenirs. Then we went to Level 5 to see the Gold and	Use of action verbs, e.g. met, walked
	Sacrifice exhibition of the treasures of the Incas. The jewellery was very beautiful.	Use of past tense, e.g. caught, was
		Use of adverbial phrases to say when and
	At 12. 30pm we left the Museum. Next we went to the	where, e.g. in the morning, to the Auckland
	Domain gardens to have lunch.	Museum
Reorientation		
	When I arrived home, it was four o'clock.	

Text Structure - Recount Orientation - introduces a setting, and main characters involved in events	MY PICNIC On Sunday my family went to the park near the Avon River. We had a barbecue and it was delicious. After that we had a swim and then we were tired so we slept.	Language Features Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. park, family, barbecue Use of adjectives to describe, e.g. delicious, tired
Record of events	When we woke up I played soccer with my brother and my father. My Mum and my sisters went for a walk through the flower gardens. Then I rode my skateboard and fell off. I didn't get hurt, but my sisters laughed at me. Mum bought some icecreams at the kiosk.	Use of conjunctions to sequence events in time, e.g. finally, after Use of action verbs, e.g. went, played, fell Use of past tense, e.g. drove, slept, went
Reorientation Evaluation	At about 6pm we went down to the river to see the boats. They were practising for the Dragon Boat competition. Finally at 7pm my family and I drove home. That night we slept well after a	Use of adverbial phrases to locate in time and place, e.g. near the Avon River, at about 6pm
	very good day.	Use of compound sentences, e.g. We had a barbecue and it was delicious.

- Write using the text structure and language features of a description, e.g. characters or settings in stories
- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Employ upper and lower case appropriately
- Use correct spacing between words, lines, and paragraphs
- Set out work using appropriate layout, e.g. margins, date, headings, subheadings, dot points, columns
- Use appropriate pen colour
- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Curriculum topics, animals, people, places, literature themes, field trips, houses, transport, school, important events, shapes, clothing, art/ craft, environment, landforms

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Write a description, e.g. character, place, event, animal, thing
- Write a description and leave out the identifying noun and get a partner to guess what it is

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use pictures, books, videos to build field knowledge
- Model a range of simple descriptions and point out text and language features, e.g. application of 'is' and 'has', spelling, punctuation
- Provide appropriate word bank and glossary, identify lexical chains
- Deconstruct to highlight key text features

Joint/guided

- Complete cloze/dictagloss to highlight particular language features, e.g. adjectives
- Write descriptions with information from a matrix, video, picture, topic sentence etc.
- Write simple descriptions for use in guessing games, e.g. 'What am I?'

- Complete cloze exercise
- Complete paragraphs
- Write descriptions, e.g. of another student
- Develop personal word banks

19. can write a description

Grammar Scope

Nouns:	
Proper nouns	e.g. Phileas Fogg
Common nouns	e.g. classroom, cupboard
Prepositions:	
Of place	in, on etc., e.g. on the walls, in the front
Of time and date	at, on, after, before etc., e.g. at the same time
Of accompaniment	with, etc., e.g. with the same people
Articles:	
Definite	the, e.g. the desks
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a cupboard
Omission of article	
before most proper nouns	e.g. His name is Phileas Fogg.
Pronouns:	
Subject	l, you, we, it etc., e.g. l usually sit.
Object	him, her, us, it etc., e.g. It has about 20 desks in it.
Possessive	our, her, my etc., e.g. my classroom, his club
Relative	who, which, where, that etc., e.g. There is a cupboard where the
	teacher keeps rulers.
Conjunctions and connective	25:
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. He wears dark suits and walks quickly.
Causal	because, so etc., e.g. The desks are joined together so the
	students sit in groups.
Adjectives:	e.g. big, coloured, left-hand, top, blue, tall, slim, clean-shaven
Adverbs:	
Of frequency	usually, always, sometimes, never etc., e.g. I usually sit with the
	same people every day.
Of manner	quickly, carefully etc., e.g. He walks quickly to his Club every day.
Of place	here, there etc., e.g. to get there
Of focus	even, really, only, either etc., He even takes the same
	number of steps.
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. This character's name is Phileas Fogg.
Empty subject (there/it) + ex	
	e.g. There is a cupboard.

Question formation:

'wh' Subject reversal 'do' support when no auxiliary Short answer forms: Verbs: Present tense verbs Punctuation: e.g. What colour is it? e.g. Is the classroom big?

e.g. Does it have 20 desks? e.g. Yes, it is. No, it isn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't.

e.g. My classroom is big. I usually sit. He wears dark suits. e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas, paragraphs

Text Structure - Description Subject

Description

MY CLASSROOM

My classroom is big. It has about 20 desks in it. The desks are joined together so the students sit in groups of four or five. In the front of the room is the whiteboard and at the right of that is the overhead projector. In the front right hand corner there is a cupboard, where the teacher keeps rulers, calculators and coloured pencils.

The room is painted white, has blue carpet and has interesting posters hanging on the walls.

When you first walk in the door and face the room, my desk is in the group of tables at the front, on the left.

I usually sit with the same people every day.

Language Features

Use of nouns that refer to a particular thing i.e. not general, e.g. my classroom

Use of pronouns to 'track' the subject (referencing), e.g. it

Use of describing adjectives, e.g. big, interesting

Use of detailed noun groups to build up the description, e.g. front right hand corner

Use of relating verbs, e.g. has, are

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. at the front, on the walls

Use of conjunctions, e.g. when



Text Structure - Literary Description

Introduction to the subject

Description

PHILEAS FOGG from 'Around the World in Eighty Days', by Jules Verne

This character's name is Phileas Fogg.

He is a tall, slim, handsome, clean-shaven Englishman who likes everything to be exact.

He wears dark suits and a top hat and walks quickly to his club at the same time every day.

He even takes the same number of steps to get there.

Language Features

Use of nouns that refer to a particular thing, i.e. not general

Use of pronouns to 'track' the subject, e.g. he, who

Use of describing adjectives, e.g. slim, handsome, dark

Use fo detailed noun groups, e.g. tall, slim, handsome, cleanshaven Englishman

Use of relating verbs, e.g. is

Use of action verbs, e.g. walks

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. at the same time every day

- Write using the text structure and language features of an information report
- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Employ upper and lower case appropriately
- Use correct spacing between words, line, and paragraphs
- Set out work using appropriate layout, e.g. margins, date, headings, subheadings, dot points, columns
- Use appropriate pen colour
- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Endangered animals, Solar System, plants, countries, cities, food, nutrition, health, drugs, computers, transport, rainforests, deserts, celebrations, art, famous people, money systems, education, exploration, settlement, landmarks

Suggested Assessment Tasks

Complete cloze

• Write an information report using appropriate visual support

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Use pictures, videos, books, trips to build up field knowledge and extend vocabulary
- Model range of simple information reports text and visuals
- Deconstruct a simple information report to show language features, e.g. existentials, articles
- Develop glossary and word banks

Joint/guided construction

- Deconstruct text to complete matrix
- Use matrix information to construct report
- Prepare appropriate visuals to support text
- Complete cloze leaving out specific language features, e.g. adjectives

- Complete cloze
- Reconstruct paragraphs from a matrix
- Write a simple information report
- Assess peers/self using checklist of text features

Grammar Scope

Nouns:		Verbs:	
Technical nouns	e.g. algae	Present tense verbs	e.g. are, look like, grow
Proper nouns	e.g. New Zealand	Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops,
Common nouns	e.g. kiwi, insects, seaweeds, colours	commas, paragraphs	
Prepositions:	-		
Of place	in, on etc., e.g. in New Zealand		
Articles:			
Definite	the, e.g. the population		
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a land of three main islands		
Omission of article before			
most proper nouns,			
with uncountable nouns,	e.g. in New Zealand		
Pronouns:			
Subject	l, you, we, they etc., e.g. They can look like huge seaforests.		
Conjunctions and connectiv	es:		
Contrastive	however, but, although etc., e.g. The main language is English		
	however many other languages are spoken.		
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. sushi and soup		
Adjectives:	e.g. central, brown, huge		
Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. Many different shells of this colour.		
Quantifiers:	very, some etc., e.g. Some famous landmarks are the Beehive,		
	Aoraki and the Auckland Harbour Bridge		
Empty subject (there/it) + e			
	e.g. There are many plants and animals.		
Question formation:			
'wh'	e.g. What are they used for?		
Subject reversal	e.g. Are there other languages spoken?		
'do' support			
when no auxiliary	e.g. Does New Zealand have four main islands?		
Modal 'can'	e.g. Can humans eat seaweed?		
Negation:	e.g. They aren't plants.		
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, they do. No, they don't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is.		
	No, it isn't.		



Text Structure - Information report

General statement - identifies and classifies the subject

Description - includes political divisions, population flora, fauna, products and landmarks

NEW ZEALAND

New Zealand is a land of three main islands. These are the North Island, the South Island and Stewart Island. There are many more small islands which are part of New Zealand. The Māori name for New Zealand is Aotearoa.

The capital city of New Zealand is Wellington. It is in the North Island.

The population of New Zealand is about 4 million. The first inhabitants to live in New Zealand were the Māori, the tangata whenua, or people of the land. After that, from the nineteenth century onwards, people came from all over the world to settle in New Zealand. The two official languages are English and Māori, however many other languages are spoken.

There are many birds and animals, such as kiwi and tuatara, and plants, such as rātā, which are only found in New Zealand.

The main products are wool, dairy products, wine, and meat.

Some famous landmarks are the Auckland Harbour Bridge, the Beehive (or House of Parliament), and Aoraki (Mt Cook).

Language Features Use of general nouns, e.g. New Zealand

Use of timeless present typical of much scientific writing, e.g. is, has

Use of relating verbs, e.g. has, are

Use of adverbial phrases to locate, e.g. in New Zealand

Use of detailed noun groups to build up description, e.g. many more small islands, the first inhabitants

Use of sentences and statements throughout

SEAWEED	Language Features Use of general nouns, e.g. shoreline
Seaweeds are algae. There are many different kinds of seaweed. Some	
grow only at one time of the year. Others grow all year round.	Use of timeless present typical of much scientific writing, e.g. grow
There are three main colour groups of seaweeds: red, green and	
brown. Green seaweeds are always found near water, usually close to the shoreline. Brown seaweeds are kelps. Kelps grow in the sea. They	Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, are
can look like huge seaforests. Red seaweeds can be many shades of this colour.	Use of detailed noun groups to build up description, e.g. many different kinds, three main colour groups
People use seaweeds for a variety of purposes. These include food, such as sushi or soup. Extracts from seaweed make ice cream smooth. Other uses are in medicine, paint and shampoo.	Use of sentences and statements throughout
	Seaweeds are algae. There are many different kinds of seaweed. Some grow only at one time of the year. Others grow all year round. There are three main colour groups of seaweeds: red, green and brown. Green seaweeds are always found near water, usually close to the shoreline. Brown seaweeds are kelps. Kelps grow in the sea. They can look like huge seaforests. Red seaweeds can be many shades of this colour. People use seaweeds for a variety of purposes. These include food, such as sushi or soup. Extracts from seaweed make ice cream smooth.

- Write using the text structure and language features of a procedure following provided scaffold, e.g. science experiment method
- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Employ upper and lower case appropriately
- Use correct spacing between words, lines, and paragraphs
- Set out work using appropriate layout, e.g. margins, date, headings, subheadings, dot points, columns
- Use appropriate pen colour
- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

All curriculum areas, scientific experiments, computers, craft, games, everyday procedures, resuscitation, solid shapes, flow charts, models, geometry, fire drill

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Complete cloze
- Record a demonstrated procedure
- Write a simple procedure with/without diagrams

Sample Strategies

Teacher Directed

- Model text structure and language features of a simple guided procedure
- Compare a range of simple guided procedures
- Deconstruct and sequence text
- Create a class word bank of adverbial phrases and action verbs

Joint/guided construction

- Use jigsaw strategy to construct text using visual stimulus and reconstruct text as a class
- Demonstrate a procedure to class/group; correct steps are recorded
- Complete guided cloze to reinforce aspects of language features and content words
- Create instructions for a familiar personal routine, e.g. boiling a kettle

- Complete cloze to reinforce aspects of language features and content
- Use visual stimulus to sequence steps
- Write a simple guided procedure
- Label diagrams

Stage 2	21. can write a simple guided procedure	Language Outcom	ies 21 (b)
Grammar Scope			
•			
Nouns:			
Common nouns	e.g. aluminium cans, jelly crystals		
Technical vocabulary	e.g. ingots		
General vocabulary	e.g. melt		
Prepositions:			
Of place	to, in, on etc., e.g. to a factory		
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with a tie wrap		
Articles:			
Definite	the, e.g. the plastic bag		
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a plastic bag		
Pronouns:			
Object	him, her, us, them etc., e.g. Turn them into ingots.		
Conjunctions and connect	tives:		
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. Melt them and turn them into ingots.		
Adjectives:	e.g. cold, small, plastic		
Quantifiers:	a little, very, some etc., e.g. a little boiling water		
Question formation:			
'wh'	e.g. What do you do first? When do you add the water?		
Subject reversal	e.g. Is the water boiling?		
'do' support			
when no auxiliary	e.g. Does the gelatine dissolve?		
Modal 'can'	e.g. Can you make a model cell?		
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, it does. No, it doesn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is.		
	No, it isn't.		
Verbs:			
Imperative verbs	e.g. collect, take, grind, melt		
Infinitive verbs	e.g. How to recycle aluminium cans.		
Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas, numerals		

Text Structure - Procedure Goal or aim

Materials/Steps to accomplish goal

e	HOW TO RECYCLE ALUMINIUM CANS	Langu Use of ingots,
	1. Collect aluminium cans.	
	2. Take them to a factory.	Use of e.g. co
	3. Grind cans into small metal chips.	Use of
	4. Melt them and turn them into ingots.	take
	5. Roll the ingots into sheets.	Use of factory
	6. Sell them to can manufacturers.	Use of
	7. Make them into new aluminium cans.	up fiel

Language Features Use of nouns and noun groups, e.g. ingots, aluminium cans, factory

Use of commands, e.g. collect, melt, roll

Use of action verbs, e.g. sell, make, take

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. to a factory, into sheets

Use of technical language to build up field, e.g. ingots, grind

HOW TO RECYLE ALUMINIUM CANS Large amounts of energy are needed to produce aluminium from bauxite – but once aluminium is in metal form it can be re-melted over and over again, saving considerable amounts of energy and bauxite. The following diagrams represent the process of recycling aluminium cans.








Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2

Note: This is not the text structure for a science experiment report. This is only the part known as method.

Text Structure - Procedure Goal or aim

Steps to accomplish goal

Materials/equipment

Materials/equipment:	
Jelly crystals	one cup of cold water
A little boiling water	gelatine
Licorice disk	jelly beans
Plastic bag	tie wrap
Measuring cup	dish

Method

Dissolve the jelly crystals in a dish in a little boiling water.
 Add one cup of cold water.
 Add a teaspoon of gelatine.
 Pour the jelly into a plastic bag.
 Put in the nucleus (a liquorice disk).
 Put in jellybeans for vacuoles (store houses).
 Tie the plastic bag with a tie wrap.
 Put in the refrigerator.

TO MAKE A MODEL OF A CELL

Language Features

Use of nouns and noun groups, e.g. a little boiling water, dish

Use of commands, e.g. add, dissolve, pour (Note that these are the first element of the clause, i.e. they are in the position of grammatical theme)

Use of action verbs, e.g. put, tie

Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. in a dish, into a plastic bag

Use of technical language to build up the field, e.g. vacuoles, nucleus

Suggested Teaching Components

- Write using the text structure and language features of a persuasive text following provided scaffold
- Use appropriate and lower case appropriately
- Use correct spacing between words, lines and paragraphs
- Set out work using appropriate layout, e.g. margins, date, headings, subheadings, dot points, columns
- Use appropriate pen colour
- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

School issues, personal issues, social issues, environmental issues, local community issues, national and international issues

Suggested Assessment Tasks

- Complete cloze
- Complete scaffold
- Write a simple guided persuasive text

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Develop word banks to build field
- Demonstrate purposes of argument and show a variety of texts to illustrate difference between fact and opinion
- Use model texts to demonstrate structure and language features, e.g. modality, temporal conjunctions
- Deconstruct text to show differences between, e.g. cause, effect, solutions
- Construct a model text
- Examine different types of verb processes e.g. action processes, mental processes and linking processes to see how each contributes to persuasive text

Joint/guided construction

- Reinforce language features, structure and content using question/answer true/false, cause/effect activities, 3 level guides
- Deconstruct text using scaffold
- Complete a persuasive text using word bank, student research and scaffold
- Create visual text to support written persuasive texts, e.g. draw and label diagrams, graphs, tables

Independent construction

- Complete a scaffold from text, video etc.
- Complete cloze or poster emphasising emotive words, images etc.
- Write a simple guided persuasive text, e.g. letter to editor

22 (b)

Grammar Scope

Nouns:		Negation:	e.g. We don't want to get cancer.
Proper nouns	e.g. English	Short answer forms:	Yes, it does. No, it doesn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is.
Common nouns	e.g. hats, school, cancer, music, industry		No, it isn't.
Prepositions:		Verbs:	
Of place	at, in, on, over etc., e.g. at school, in our society	Present tense verbs	e.g. is, lead, want, likes, tell
Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with other subjects	Present continuous	
Articles:		tense verbs	e.g. when you are playing outside
Definite	the, e.g. the teachers	Infinitive verbs	e.g. You wear a hat to stop you from getting sunburnt.
Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a hat	Verbal nouns	
Omission of article		(gerunds - nominalisation)	e.g. learning, playing
before most proper nouns,		Modals	should, could, might etc., e.g. Music should be compulsory.
with uncountable nouns	e.g. Everyone likes music.	Conditional constructions	e.g. Firstly, if you don't wear a hat, you will get sunburnt.
Pronouns:		Simple contractions:	don't, can't, isn't etc., e.g. We don't want to get cancer.
Subject	I, you, we, they etc., e.g. I believe you should wear a hat.	Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops,
Object	you, him, her, us etc., e.g. to stop you from getting sunburnt		commas, paragraphs
Possessive	our, her, my, their etc., e.g. in our school		
Conjunctions and connectiv	res:		
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. Also, songs tell stories, help us with English and make us happy.		
Causal	because, so, as etc., e.g. So, I want everyone in our school to wear hats.		
Temporal	firstly, secondly, finally etc., e.g. Firstly, if you don't wear a hat you will get sunburnt.		
Adjectives:	e.g. painful, compulsory, enjoyable, happy		
Adverbs:			
Of frequency	always, sometimes, never etc., e.g. I believe that you should		
	always wear a hat.		
Quantifiers:	very, some etc., e.g. music of some kind		
Question formation:			
'wh'	e.g. Why should you wear a hat? What does sunburn lead to?		
Subject reversal	e.g. Is sunburn painful?		
'do' support			
when no auxiliary	e.g. Does sunburn lead to skin cancer?		
Modal 'can'	e.g. Can you get cancer from sunburn?	I	

Text Structure - Opinion/Argument Title	SHOULD STUDENTS WEAR HATS AT SCHOOL ?	Language Features Use of general nouns, e.g. hats
Statement of position	I believe that you should always wear a hat at school during the	Use of technical words, e.g. cancer
	summer terms when you are outside, to stop you from getting sunburnt.	Use of action verbs, e.g. wear
Arguments	Firstly, if you don't wear a hat, you will get sunburnt and sunburn is painful.	Use of thinking verbs, e.g. believe
		Use of modality to reinforce argument, e.g. should
	Secondly, sunburn could lead to skin cancer when you get older and we don't want to get cancer.	Use of complex sentences, e.g. Firstly, if you don't wear a hat, you will get sunburnt and sunburn is painful.
	In addition, hats can stop you getting headaches from the heat.	
Reinforcement of position statement	So, everyone in our school, including the teachers, should wear hats at	Use of connectives to sequence arguments, e.g. firstly, secondly,
	lunchtimes during summer.	Use of connectives to show logical connections between and conclude arguments, e.g. so, in addition

22 (d)

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2

Text Structure - Opinion/Argument Title	SHOULD MUSIC BE COMPULSORY AT SCHOOL ?	Language Features Use of general nouns, e.g. music
Statement of position	Music should be compulsory at school for several reasons. These include our enjoyment of music, its contribution to the economy and the skills it gives us.	Use of action verbs, e.g. play, learning
Arguments	Firstly, everyone likes music of some kind. Music is enjoyable.	Use of thinking verbs, e.g. believe, know
	Secondly, the music industry is very popular in our society and the music industry is a	Use of modality, e.g. should
	very big one. It employs people in many different ways. Therefore it is important to know something about it.	Use of relating verbs, e.g. is, have
	Thirdly, learning to play music and to play an instrument helps you with other subjects. Studies have shown that it helps to improve the way the brain works. Also, playing an	Use of compound sentences, e.g. Also songs tell stories, help us with English and make us happy.
	instrument is interesting and enjoyable. Songs tell stories, help us with English and make us happy. In addition, joining a music group can help us feel part of the school.	Use of connectives to sequence arguments, e.g. firstly, secondly
Reinforcement of position statement	In conclusion, for the above reasons, I believe that music should be compulsory at school.	Use of connectives to develop argument, show types of logical links between ideas and conclude argument, e.g. Therefore, In addition, In conclusion

Suggested Teaching Components

- Write a simple poem, e.g. haiku, acrostic or shape
- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Use appropriate spacing and layout
- Use appropriate pen colour
- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Self, animals, humorous poems, people, places, emotions, senses, events, weather, songs

Suggested Assessment Tasks

Write a simple poem

Sample Strategies

Teacher Directed

- Build up word banks using wall charts showing examples of different techniques
- Model a variety of simple poems/songs
- Demonstrate rhyming patterns, rhythm, alliteration, onomatopoeia etc.
- Give examples of poetic devices, e.g. similes, metaphors, personification
- Deconstruct simple poems, e.g. haiku poems

Joint/guided construction

- Complete guided cloze activity focussing on language features and poetic devices
- Construct limericks and other pattern poems (e.g. haiku) using scaffold
- Brainstorm and complete partially constructed poem
- Write acrostic poems
- Make a book of class poems

Independent construction

- Complete cloze
- Write short poems

Stage 2	WRITING 23. can write a simple poem	Language Outcomes 23 (k
Grammar Scope		
Nouns:		
Proper nouns	e.g. Autumn	
Common nouns	e.g. leaves, ground, sadness	
Prepositions:		
Of place	along, on, over etc., e.g. along the ground	
Articles:		
Definite	the, e.g. the wind	
Omission of articles	-	
before most proper nouns,		
with uncountable nouns	e.g. in Autumn	
Pronouns:		
Subject	l, you, we, they etc., e.g. You are down.	
Possessive	our, her, my, their etc., e.g. crunching under my feet	
Conjunctions and connective	es:	
Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. You are down and alone.	
Question formation:		
'wh'	e.g. Why is the poem sad? What is the poem about?	
Subject reversal	e.g. ls it winter?	
'do' support		
when no auxiliary	e.g. Do the leaves move along the ground?	
Modal 'can'	e.g. Can you imagine the trees.	
Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, she does. No, she doesn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't. Yes, it is. No, it isn't.	
Verbs:		
Present tense verbs	e.g. is	
Participles used		
as action verbs	e.g. falling, moving, rustling, crunching	
Punctuation:	e.g. apostrophes, question marks, upper/lower case, full stops,	
	commas, lines, verses, stanzas, chorus	

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Stage 2	WRITING 23. can write a simple poe	m		Language Outcomes	23 (d
()					
ext Structure and Language Fea	atures: Example 2				
			_		
	Text Structure - Poem (acrostic)	SADNESS	Language Features Poetical Devices		
	Title	Sadness is when you	Use of alliteration, e.g. sad, sorry		
	Lines	Are	Use of imagery through use of adj e.g. down, sad, sorry, alone	ectives,	
		Down	e.g. down, sau, sorry, alone		
		aNd			
		alonE			
		Sad and			
		Sorry			
	L		1		

Suggested Teaching Components

- Write using the text structure and language features of a personal response, e.g. book review, film review
- Use appropriate vocabulary
- Employ upper and lower case appropriately
- Use correct spacing between words, lines, and paragraphs
- Set out work using appropriate layout, e.g. margins, date, headings, subheadings, dot points, columns
- Use appropriate pen colour
- Use the writing process to plan, draft and redraft

Suggested Themes, Topics and/or Experiences

Literature, artworks, films, TV shows, radio, songs, plays, piece of music

Suggested Assessment Tasks

• Write a simple personal response

Sample Strategies

Teacher directed

- Demonstrate a variety of personal responses
- Deconstruct a model personal response
- Construct complex sentences using relative pronouns and demonstrate how present tense can change to past tense for emotive writing
- Construct model personal response from familiar class text

Joint/guided construction

- Complete guided cloze about familiar text, practise relative pronouns
- Complete dictagloss
- Write questions to elicit responses and from matrix
- Write a summary of the matrix

Independent construction

- Complete cloze
- Write simple responses using visual stimulus
- Write simple film/book reviews using scaffold

24 (b)

Proper nounse.g. Jules Verne, Koro, the Whale RiderYes, it was. No, it wasn't.Common nounse.g. novel, author, adventuresVerbs:Prepositions:Infinitive verbse.g. when she helps to rescueOf placearound, on, over etc., e.g. around the worldPresent tense verbse.g. plays, receives, find, take, isOf timein, after, before etc., e.g. in 80 daysPast tense verbse.g. liked, enjoyed, was, told	Grammar Scope			
Common nounse.g. novel, author, adventuresVerbs:Prepositions:indinitive verbse.g. when she helps to rescueOf placearound, on, over etc., e.g. around the worldPresent tense verbse.g. plays, receives, find, take, isOf timein, after, before etc., e.g. in 80 daysPast tense verbse.g. liked, enjoyed, was, toldOf accompanimentWith etc., e.g. with himPunctuation:e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, comArticles:an, a.g. a small villagean, a.g. a small villageapostrophes, paragraphsOrbision of articlebefore most proper nours,with uncountable nourse.g. in WhangarăWith uncountable nourse.g. in Whangarăe.g. with himSubjectI, you, we, they etc., e.g. I reade.g. who, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New Zealande.g. funy, beautiful, natural, happyAddirevand also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne Causalg. funy, beautiful, natural, happyAddirevis:e.g. funy, beautiful, natural, happye.g. funy, beautiful, natural, happyAdverts:really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.e.g. funy, beautiful, natural, happyAdverts:e.g. funy, beautiful, natural, happyAdverts:really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.e.g. funy, beautiful, natural, happyAdverts:really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.e.g. funy, beautiful, natural, happyAdverts:really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.e.g. funy, beautiful, natural, happy	Nouns:		Short answer forms:	e.g. Yes, she does. No, she doesn't. Yes, it has. No, it hasn't.
Prepositions: Infinitive verbs e.g. when she helps to rescue Of place around, on, over etc., e.g. around the world Present tense verbs e.g. plays, receives, find, take, is Of accompaniment with etc., e.g. with him Past tense verbs e.g. plays, receives, find, take, is Of accompaniment with etc., e.g. with him Past tense verbs e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, com apostrophes, paragraphs Articles:	Proper nouns	e.g. Jules Verne, Koro, the Whale Rider		Yes, it was. No, it wasn't.
Of placearound, on, over etc., e.g. around the worldPresent tense verbse.g. plays, receives, find, take, isOf timein, after, before etc., e.g. in 80 daysPast tense verbse.g. liked, enjoyed, was, toldArticles:e.g. with thimPunctuation:e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, comAnticles:an, a, e.g. a small villagePunctuation:e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, comOmission of articlebefore most proper nours,with uncountable nourse.g. in WhangaráPronouns:subjectl, you, we, they etc., e.g. I readbis, our, herr, my, their etc., e.g. with himPossessivehis, our, herr, my, their etc., e.g. which is a small village in New Zealande.g. fund, bas, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne Causaland also, as well etc., e.g. I really liked this book because it was very funny.Addireives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happye.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Of placeout, there etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Of placeDemonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book. Of placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book. Out, there etc., e.g.out, there etc., e.g.Ot foursreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Out, that where etc., e.g.out, there etc., e.g.Ot fours or intensityreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Out, there etc., e.g.out, there etc., e.g.Ot f	Common nouns	e.g. novel, author, adventures	Verbs:	
Of time in, after, before etc., e.g. in 80 days Past tense verbs e.g. liked, enjoyed, was, told Of accompaniment with etc., e.g. with him Past tense verbs e.g. liked, enjoyed, was, told Articles: Definite the, e.g. the world apostrophes, paragraphs Indefinite an, a. e.g. a small village apostrophes, paragraphs Omission of article before most proper nouns, e.g. in Whangará Pronouns: e.g. in Whangará e.g. with him Possessive his, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant. Relative Relative who, which, that, where etc., e.g. He took his servant. wew Zealand Conjunctions and connectives: Additive and, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne Causal because, so, as etc., e.g. I liked this book because it was very funny. Adjectives: e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happy Addiverbs: of focus or intensity really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Guestion formation: Demonstratives: this, the, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book. Guestion formation: E.g. funny beautiful, natural, happy	Prepositions:		Infinitive verbs	e.g. when she helps to rescue
Of accompaniment with etc., e.g. with him Punctuation: e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, com apostrophes, paragraphs Articles:	Of place	around, on, over etc., e.g. around the world	Present tense verbs	e.g. plays, receives, find, take, is
Articles: apostrophes, paragraphs Definite the, e.g. the world Indefinite an, a. e.g. a small village Omission of article before most proper nouns, with uncountable nouns e.g. in Whangarā Pronouns: subject Subject l, you, we, they etc., e.g. I read Object him, her, us etc., e.g. with him Possessive his, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant. Relative who, which, that, where etc., e.g. Which is a small village in New Zealand Conjunctions and connective: Additive Additive e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happy Adverbs: e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happy Of focus or intensity really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Of place out, there etc., e.g. Demonstratives: this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book. Question formation: this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.<	Of time	in, after, before etc., e.g. in 80 days	Past tense verbs	e.g. liked, enjoyed, was, told
Definite the, e.g. the world Indefinite an, a, e.g. a small village Omission of article before most proper nouns, with uncountable nouns e.g. in Whangará Pronouns: subject Subject l, you, we, they etc., e.g. I read Object him, her, us etc., e.g. With him Possessive his, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant. Relative who, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New Zealand Conjunctions and connectives: Additive Additive and, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne Causal Causal because, so, as etc., e.g. I liked this book because it was very funny. Adjectives: e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happy Adverbs: ot for cous or intensity Of focus or intensity really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Of place out, there etc., e.g. Demonstratives: this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book. Question formation: this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Of accompaniment	with etc., e.g. with him	Punctuation:	e.g. question marks, upper/lower case, full stops, commas,
Indefinitean, a, e.g. a small villageOmission of article-before most proper nouns;with uncountable nounse.g. in WhangarăPronouns:Subjectl, you, we, they etc., e.g. I readObjecthim, her, us etc., e.g. with himPossessivehis, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant.Relativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connective:-Additiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne CausalCausalbecause, so, as etc., e.g. I liked this book because it was very funny.Adjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:-Of focus or intensityreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Articles:			apostrophes, paragraphs
Omission of articlebefore most proper nouns, with uncountable nounse.g. in WhangarâPronouns:Subjectl, you, we, they etc., e.g. I readObjecthim, her, us etc., e.g. with himPossessivehis, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant.Relativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. Which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connectives:AdditiveAdditiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne CausalCausalbecause, so, as etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Of focus or intensityOf focus or intensityreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Of placeOf placeout, there etc., e.g.Oemostratives:this, that, these, endse, e.g. I really liked this book. Question formation:	Definite	the, e.g. the world		
before most proper nouns, with uncountable nounse.g. in WhangarãPronuns:Subjectl, you, we, they etc., e.g. 1 readObjectlim, her, us etc., e.g. with himPossessivehis, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant. RelativeRelativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. Which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connective:Additiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne CausalAdjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. of placeOf focus or intensityreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. of placeOf placeout, there etc., e.g.Demostratives:tis, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book. causalOetwist formation:tis, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Indefinite	an, a, e.g. a small village		
with uncountable nounse.g. in WhangarăPronouns:SubjectI, you, we, they etc., e.g. I readObjecthim, her, us etc., e.g. with himObjecthis, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant.Relativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connective:Additiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne CausalAdditiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne CausalAdjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:of focus or intensityOf placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Omission of article			
Pronouns:SubjectI, you, we, they etc., e.g. I readObjecthim, her, us etc., e.g. with himPossessivehis, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant.Relativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connectives:New ZealandConjunctions and connectives:New ZealandAdditiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne CausalAdjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:out, there etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Of placeOf placeout, there etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Question formation:	before most proper nouns	5,		
SubjectI, you, we, they etc., e.g. I readObjecthim, her, us etc., e.g. with himPossessivehis, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant.Relativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connective:Additiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne CausalAdditiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules VerneAdjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:ut, there etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	with uncountable nouns	e.g. in Whangarā		
Objecthim, her, us etc., e.g. with himPossessivehis, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant.Relativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connective:New ZealandAdditiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne because, so, as etc., e.g. I liked this book because it was very funny.Adjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:out, there etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of focus or intensityreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Pronouns:			
Possessivehis, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant.Relativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connective:.Additiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne because, so, as etc., e.g. I liked this book because it was very funny.Adjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of focus or intensityreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Subject	l, you, we, they etc., e.g. l read		
Relativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connective:Additiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne CausalCausaland, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:eally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. of placeOf focus or intensity of placereally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book. this that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Object	him, her, us etc., e.g. with him		
Relativewho, which, that, where etc., e.g. which is a small village in New ZealandConjunctions and connective:Additiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne CausalCausaland, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:eally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. of placeOf focus or intensity of placereally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. out, there etc., e.g.Demostratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book. this book.Question formation:this that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Possessive	his, our, her, my, their etc., e.g. He took his servant.		
Conjunctions and connective:Additiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules VerneCausalbecause, so, as etc., e.g. I liked this book because it was very funny.Adjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:of focus or intensityOf focus or intensityreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Relative			
Additiveand, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules VerneCausalbecause, so, as etc., e.g. I liked this book because it was very funny.Adjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:of focus or intensityOf focus or intensityreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.		New Zealand		
Causalbecause, so, as etc., e.g. I liked this book because it was very funny.Adjectives:e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happyAdverbs:eally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of focus or intensityreally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Of placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Conjunctions and connectiv	ves:		
Adjectives: e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happy Adverbs: Of focus or intensity really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book. Of place out, there etc., e.g. Demonstratives: this, that, these, e.g. I really liked this book. Question formation: Example 1	Additive	and, also, as well etc., e.g. and the author was Jules Verne		
Adverbs:Of focus or intensityOf placeDemonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:	Causal	because, so, as etc., e.g. I liked this book because it was very funny.		
Of focus or intensity Of placereally, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:Even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.	Adjectives:	e.g. funny, beautiful, natural, happy		
Of placeout, there etc., e.g.Demonstratives:this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.Question formation:Image: Comparison of the section	Adverbs:			
Demonstratives: this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book. Question formation: this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.	Of focus or intensity	really, only, even etc., e.g. I really liked this book.		
Question formation:	Of place	out, there etc., e.g.		
	Demonstratives:	this, that, these, those, e.g. I really liked this book.		
'wh' e.g. Why did you like the book? What was the book about?	Question formation:			
	'wh'	e.g. Why did you like the book? What was the book about?		
subject reversal e.g. Is the book funny?	subject reversal	e.g. Is the book funny?		
'do' support	'do' support			
when no auxiliary e.g. Did you like the book?	when no auxiliary	e.g. Did you like the book?		
Modal 'can' e.g. Can Fogg travel round the world in time?	Modal 'can'	• •		

Stage 2

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 1



Text Structure - Response to literary text

Context - gives background on the text, e.g. author, setting, brief synopsis

Opinion/Reaction - explores the qualities and effectiveness of the text, expressing personal feelings

'AROUND THE WORLD IN 80 DAYS'

The title of the novel I read was 'Around the World in 80 Days' and the author was Jules Verne. It was written in the nineteenth century, about 100 years ago. It was about an English explorer named Phileas Fogg who made a bet with some friends that he could travel around the world in 80 days. He took along his servant, a Frenchman named Passepartout, and had many adventures on the way.

One of the most exciting parts of the book was when Phileas Fogg rescued the woman who was going to be burned alive. I admired his courage.

I really liked this book because it was funny and told me about a lot of different countries in the world. Jules Verne made the end of each chapter exciting because you wanted to know what was going to happen next. It had a happy ending too.

Language Features

Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. Phileas Fogg, novel, character, author, novel

Use of complex sentences, e.g. It was about an Englishman named Phileas Fogg who made a bet with some friends that he could travel around the world in 80 days.

Use of adverbial phrases to say when and where events took place, e.g. in 80 days, on the way

Use of past tense to recount events and evaluate text

Use of feeling, saying verbs, e.g. liked, told

Text Structure and Language Features: Example 2

Text Structure - Response to Literature Title Context - gives background information on author, setting, main characters, brief synopsis	WHALE RIDER The title of the movie I studied is 'Whale Rider'. It is based on novel by a Māori writer, Witi Ihimaera. The main characters are Pai, a young Māori girl, and Koro her grandfather, an elder of the tribe. The movie is set in Whangarā, which is a small village in New Zealand. Koro is trying to find the person who will lead the tribe in the future, but he believes this person must be male, as it is Māori tradition. Pai knows that she should be the leader, but it takes a long time for her grandfather to realise that she is the Whale Rider, the chosen one.	 Language Features Use of nouns to name people, places, things, e.g. Pai, Koro, New Zealand Use of complex sentences, e.g. Koro is trying to find the person who will lead the tribe in the future, but he believes this person must be male. Use of adjectives (including opinion adjectives) to build description e.g. huge, magnificent Use of adverbial phrases, e.g. on the beach
Opinion/reaction - explores the qualities and effectiveness of text, expressing personal feelings	 Pai must pass the tests to show she is the chosen one and nearly drowns when she helps to rescue a whale which has been stranded on the beach. Finally Koro accepts that Pai should be the leader of the tribe. I really enjoyed this movie because it made me realise that people have different beliefs and ways of living and made me understand some Māori culture. I also enjoyed the beautiful, natural scenery of the New Zealand coast. The best shot in the film was the slow motion shot where Pai was riding a huge, magnificent whale and everyone thought she had drowned. 	Use of past and/or present tense (present tense to describe what film is about) Use of feeling verbs, e.g. liked, enjoyed, realised Use of conjunctions, e.g. because, when
Evaluation	I would recommend this movie to anyone interested in understanding another culture.	